



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EducT
1719
07.341

ESSENTIALS OF GERMAN GRAMMAR

BY
WILHELM



E due T 1719.07.341

Ginn and Company

Given to

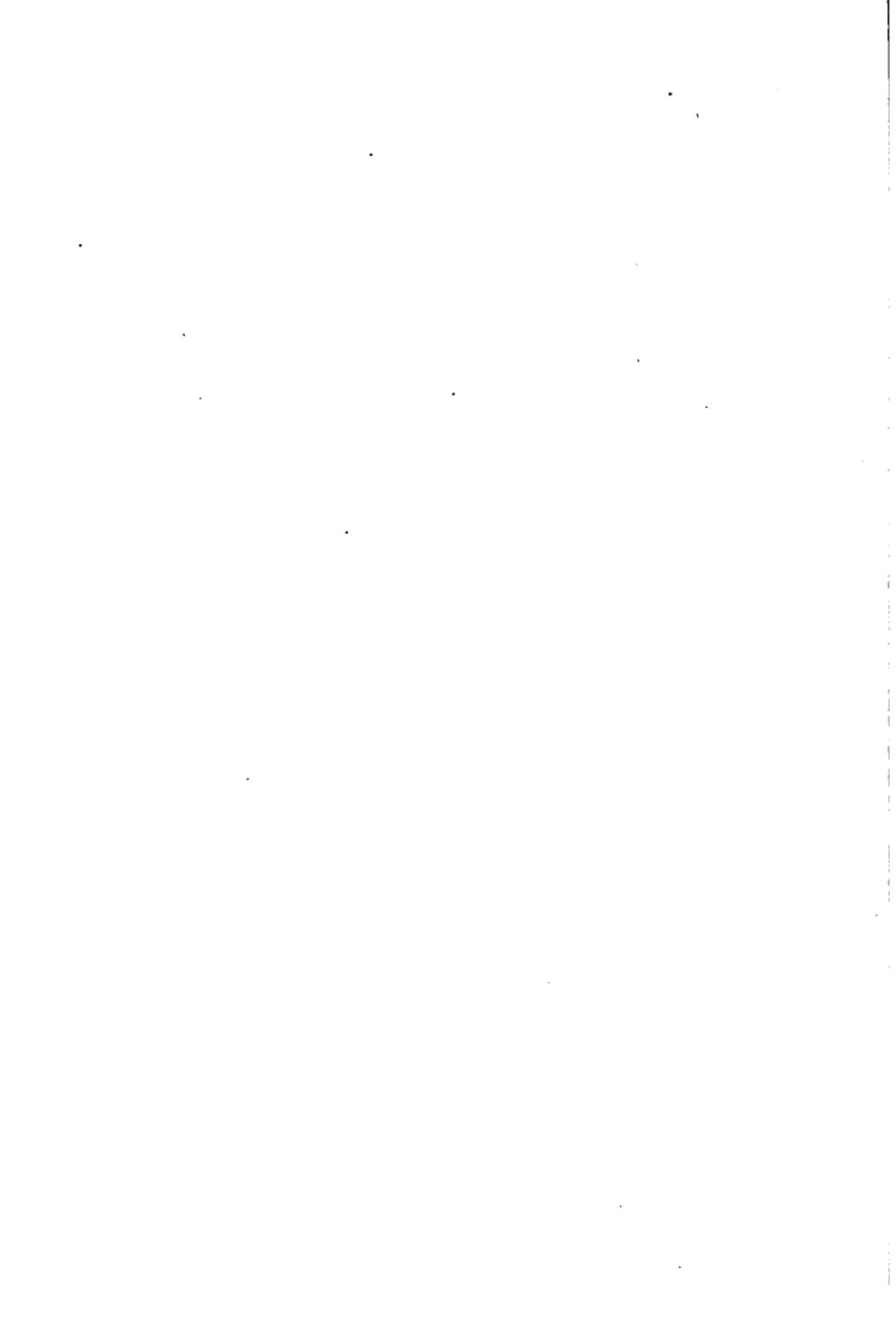
Mount Holyoke College

by

Ginn and Company



3 2044 102 777 711



THE ESSENTIALS OF
GERMAN GRAMMAR

BY

ALVAN EMILE DUERR

HEADMASTER, POLYTECHNIC PREPARATORY SCHOOL,
BROOKLYN



GINN & COMPANY

BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

Educ T 1719.07.341

✓



ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

COPYRIGHT, 1905, 1907, BY

ALVAN EMILE DUERR

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

58.9

The Athenaeum Press
GINN & COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

TO
MY FATHER
TO WHOSE INTEREST AND ENCOURAGEMENT
THIS BOOK
OWES ITS GREATEST DEBT



PREFACE

This manual is written with the conviction that the disciplinary possibilities of German are too often neglected ; that a subject need not be made easy to be interesting. The field of German grammar is so vast, that to cover it in a secondary-school course is quite out of the question. What, then, shall be omitted? No two teachers will answer this question alike ; no single teacher will answer it in the same way two successive years ; for the progressive teacher teaches less each succeeding year, his growth being marked, not by more things taught, but by fewer things better taught. Pedagogically it is a mistake to tell a pupil anything that you do not justly expect him to remember, and that you will not be able to call for constantly in the course of the recitations following. Unless the teacher can demonstrate to the pupil the necessity for paying attention to his statements by making only such as are pertinent, his classes will soon turn a deaf ear even to important points.

Such is the theory of this book. Nothing has been inserted that cannot be kept constantly before the pupil ; nothing has been intentionally omitted which should be kept there. Some points may seem essential that are not to be found ; but they are so clearly logical developments of what has been stated, the pupil in following his own judgment would be so sure to get them right, that it seemed a waste of time to discuss them. Then, too, certain subjects have intentionally not been treated exhaustively, so as not to confuse the slower pupil, or to deprive the teacher of an opportunity to add interest to the recitation by developing the point and giving the brighter pupils additional food for thought, while the rest are busied with what has already been given them.

It will be observed that there are no notes ; sentences have intentionally been simplified so that the pupil could do them without aid, that he might not be impressed from the very start with how much he did not know, and with the vast number of irregularities in the language. The best way to interest the pupil is to give him something that he can do, which has been the constant aim of this book. That the sentences are less valuable because not quite so idiomatic, no one will assert, if he believe in the disciplinary value of thorough linguistic training.

The same argument applies to the drills ; their one *raison d'être* is to give the pupil facility in the machinery of the language ; that he may soon leave behind him mistakes in mere forms, that genitives may come forth as readily as his English possessives, because he will have formed them so often that they have become second nature with him. No apology need be offered for omitting the meaning of words used in the drills ; for many a word illustrates admirably a rule of declension, whose meaning would be valueless to the beginner. And who would think of giving up examples in algebra because the pupil cannot be told their graphic value, or of giving up finger-exercises in music because they lack harmony ? Nor will they seem lifeless ; for pupils become enthusiastic over the hardest work, if it yield to proper treatment, and they be not confronted at every turn with an example in which the rule does *not* apply. For this reason the drills have been made up carefully ; no words have been introduced that do not illustrate a rule already stated ; words are not repeated, so that a pupil may be taught in these matters to depend upon his reason, and not upon his memory. The drills have been made long enough to give some variety even to fairly large classes ; should they prove too long for particular classes, it will be easy to use as much of them as seems advisable.

Rules have been worded so as to admit of the least possible number of exceptions, and still be concise and definite enough to appeal to the reason, and to be memorized easily. Classifications

have been made with a view to practicability in application, which is the only apology necessary for having departed from the traditional subdivisions of the strong verb. The comparatively short time that it takes the beginner to master the inflection of the adjective and the verb under this arrangement will prove sufficient defense for any innovations. The term "principal parts of a noun" seems as logical as "the principal parts of a verb," and consequently has been used throughout to designate the nominative and genitive singular and the nominative plural.

Throughout the vocabularies only such information has been given as is absolutely necessary; it is a mistake to ask a pupil to learn a lot of rules for the inflection of nouns and verbs, and then deprive him of every opportunity to apply them; a pupil will learn what he must learn, no more, no less; then it would be unwise to give him the parts of his nouns and verbs, when he can get them for himself. However, his attention is called to irregularities, so that the absence of any information in the vocabulary means that his rules are to be applied regularly. On the other hand, greater care has been taken to indicate the part of speech of each word; for many mistakes of the beginner are due to an apparently accurate choice of the right meaning, but the wrong part of speech.

The anecdotes which replace the regular sentences in the latter part of the book will, it is hoped, appeal to teachers who believe in beginning connected reading at an early date. What they lose in ability to illustrate certain grammatical points, they gain in the interest excited. Moreover, it is expected that the drills will furnish sufficient practice in all grammatical forms and constructions.

The treatment of cognates may seem out of proportion with the size of this book, but hardly disproportionate to their importance in acquiring a good vocabulary. However, it did not seem wise to indicate cognates in the vocabularies, which will be used only in the elementary stages when this subject is best left untouched.

I have consulted freely Hempl's *German Orthography and Phonology*, and the grammars of Blatz, Wilmanns, Weisse, and Thomas. It is with keen appreciation that I acknowledge further my indebtedness to Prof. Francis B. Gummere, of Haverford College, to Prof. Hermann Collitz, of Bryn Mawr College, to Mr. Thomas B. Bronson, of the Lawrenceville School, to my colleague, Mr. F. L. Smith, and to Mr. M. B. Lambert, of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, for their interest and help. I am, however, especially indebted to Miss Anna S. Kitchel, of the Eastern District High School of Brooklyn, who has made many and valuable suggestions; to the Editorial Department of Ginn & Company for its many courtesies, especially to Mr. Steven T. Byington, whose generous interest and mastery of details have contributed materially to whatever excellence this book may possess; and finally to my friend and colleague, Mr. I. H. B. Spiers, whose time and rare linguistic acumen have been at my disposal whenever I chose to lay claim to them, and who has been for me a Court of Final Appeal when I have been in doubt.

ALVAN EMILE DUERR

PHILADELPHIA, February 5, 1905

CONTENTS

PART I

	PAGE
Alphabet	1
Pronunciation :	
Vowels	3
Diphthongs	4
Umlaut	4
Quantity	5
Consonants	6
Syllabication	8
Accent	8
Punctuation	9
Inflection	
Gender	16
The Articles	16
Present Indicative of <i>haben</i> and <i>sein</i>	17
Prepositions governing the Dative or Accusative	19
THE NOUN	
Strong Declension	22
Prepositions governing the Dative, the Accusative	25
First Class	27
Word List I	30
Second Class	31
Word-order	32
Third Class	35
Past Tense of Weak Verbs	35
Weak Declension	38
Normal Sentence-arrangement	39
Mixed Declension	42
Classification of Nouns	45

	PAGE
Gender	46
Proper Names	48
Word List II	51
THE ADJECTIVE:	
Pronominal Adjective	52
Descriptive Adjective	55
Comparison	59
Numerals	62
Expressions of Time	63
THE PRONOUN:	
Personal	66
Reflexive	67
Possessive	70
Demonstrative	71
Interrogative	74
Relative	74
Dependent Clauses	76
Subordinating Conjunctions	77
THE VERB	
Present Tense	79
Past Tense and Perfect Participle, Weak	80
Expressions of Measure	85
Word List III	86
Past Tense and Perfect Participle, Strong	89
Ablaut Classes	90
a Class	91
e Class	92
i Class	95
Inseparable Prefixes	96
Separable and Doubtful Prefixes	98
Simple Forms of <i>fortlaufen</i>	99
t Class	101
Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse	101
ie Class	103

	PAGE
Perfect Tenses	105
Future Tenses	109
Synopsis of <i>sehen</i>	110
Unreal Conditions	111
Modal Auxiliaries	113
Irregularity of Order	113
Wissen	116
Reflexive Verbs	120
Passive Voice	123
Synopsis of <i>sehen</i> in the Passive Voice	124

PART II

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE	127
---------------------------------------	------------

THE CASES :

Nominative	128
Genitive	128
Dative	131
Accusative	133

DECLENSION OF NOUNS :

First Class, Supplementary Nouns	135
Second Class, Noun Lists	136
Third Class, Noun Lists	137
Weak Declension, Noun Lists	138
Mixed Declension, Noun Lists	140

THE ADJECTIVE :

Pronominal Adjectives	140
Declension of Adjectives	140
Adjectives Umlauting in Comparison	141

THE VERB :

List of Strong Verbs	142
Irregular Past Subjunctive	150
Reflexive Verbs	151

	PAGE
Participles	152
Infinitive	153
Subjunctive	153
Use of Tenses	155
 WORD FORMATION:	
Nouns	157
Adjectives	160
Verbs	161
Cognates	163
 APPENDIX	
 PARADIGMS OF THE VERB:	
Machen	169
Haben	171
Sehen	173
Sein	175
Werben	177
 VOCABULARIES AND WORD-INDEX.	183
SUBJECT-INDEX	213

ESSENTIALS OF GERMAN

PART ONE

THE GERMAN ALPHABET

1. The German alphabet is as follows:

German form	German name	Roman form	German script	Roman script
À a	ah	A a	À a	À a
ß b	bay	B b	ß b	ß b
Œ c	tsay	C c	Œ c	C c
Đ ð	day	D d	Đ ð	Đ d
Œ e	ay	E e	Œ e	Œ e
ß f	ef	F f	ß f	ß f
Œ g	gay	G g	Œ g	Œ g
હ h	hah	H h	હ h	હ h
િ i	ee	I i	િ i	િ i
િ j	yut	J j	િ j	િ j

German form	German name	Roman form	German script	Roman script
À à	kah	K k	À à	K k
À à	el	L l	À à	L l
À à	em	M m	À à	M m
À à	en	N n	À à	N n
À à	oh	O o	À à	O o
À à	pay	P p	À à	P p
À à	koo	Q q	À à	Q q
À à	er	R r	À à	R r
À à	es	S s	À à	S s
À à	tay	T t	À à	T t
À à	oo	U u	À à	U u
À à	fow	V v	À à	V v
À à	vay	W w	À à	W w
À à	ix	X x	À à	X x
À à	ipsilon	Y y	À à	Y y
À à	tset	Z z	À à	Z z

2. The digraphs are **ch** (tsay hah), **tsh**, **ng**, **ph**, **ß**, **ÿ**, and **th**; but **ph** and **th** appear now only in foreign words.

The trigraph is **ſch**.

The diphthongs are **ai**, **au**, **ei**, **eu**.

The umlauts are **ä** (a umlaut), **ö**, **ü**, **äu**.

ſ is used initially or medially: **ſo**, **leſen**.

ß is used at the end of a word or of a stem-syllable: **das**, **Weißheit**.

ð = **ff**, and is so written when the word is divided into syllables: **baſ-ten**.

ȝ = **ts**, and has the value of two consonants.

þ = **ff** or **ſs**, and is used except between two short vowels: **laſſen**, **laſt**, **ließ**, **lieſen**. The proper form for **þ** in Roman letters is

þ (**ſs** is also permissible), capitals **SZ**; in German script **þ**;

in Roman script it is convenient to let the old **ſſ** represent

þiſſ: thus, **leiſſen**, **þuſſ**.

THE VOWELS

3. The vowels are **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, **ÿ**. They are either long or short, the difference being one of quantity rather than quality. In referring to German letters their German names should always be used, since the name suggests the sound of the letter, and pronunciation thus becomes easier.

ä = **a** in *far*: **Bater**, **baden**.

ä = **a** in *farmer*: **Häthmer**, **fallen**.

ë = **a** in *fate*: **Feder**, **nehmen**.

ë = **e** in *let*: **Bett**, **wessen**.

e is obscure when unaccented, and is then pronounced like unaccented **e** in *tendency*: **tomme**, **hantelte**; but the unaccented **e** of *e'lend* is not obscure.

e is silent after accented **i**: **die**, **lieſen**; but unaccented **ie** is dissyllabic, and the **e** is obscure: **Fa-mi-lie**.

i = *i* in *machine* : ihm, lieben.

ī = *i* in *pit* : bin, Zimmer.

ī is generally written *ie* : die, viel ; however, *ie* is pronounced either long or short in *giebst*, *giebt*, *gieb* (now written *gibst*, *gibt*, *gib*), *siebte*, *siebzehn*, *siezig*, *vielleicht*, *viertel*, *vierzehn*, *vierzig*, *ziemlich*.

ō = *o* in *no* : ohne, Boden.

ō has no equivalent in English, being merely a shortened *ō*, a short, open vowel, resembling the *o* in *forty* (Hempl 210, 2; and N. 3) : Gott, Gold, fort.

ū = *u* in *rule* : Hut, Gruß.

ū = *u* in *full* : mußte, unter.

ÿ is rare, and is generally pronounced like *i*, though many prefer to give it the sound of *ü* : Gymna'sium, Myrte.

4. Diphthongs :

ai and ei = *ai* in *aisle* : Kaiser, ein.

au = *ou* in *house* : aus, Haut.

āu and eu = *oi* in *noise* : Mäuse, euer.

5. Umlaut : The umlaut is a modification of the vowel sound, and was due originally to the presence of an *i* in the final syllable, the sound of which was anticipated in pronouncing the previous letters, until it modified the preceding vowel.

ā = *ai* in *fair* : Mähre, Täler.

ā = *ě* : fällen, Äpfel.

āu = *oi* in *noise* : Mäuse, Räuber.

ō = French *eu*. Round the lips, as if about to whistle, and pronounce English *ay* : Böhmen, flöge.

ō is the same sound, but shorter : Schöpfer, Hölle.

ū = French *u*. Round the lips, as if about to whistle, and pronounce English *ee* : über, trüb.

ū is the same sound, but shorter : Kürze, müffen.

QUANTITY

6. A vowel is long —

- a. When doubled : *Saal*, *Meer*, *Boot*.
- b. When followed by *h*; and accented i also when followed by silent *e* : *ähnen*, *rief*.
- c. When final or followed by a single consonant in an accented syllable : *du*, *Gebet'*.

7. A vowel is short in an accented syllable when followed by two or more consonants ; in an unaccented syllable it is generally short : *Bett*, *Wechsel*, *Königin*, *Papier'*.

8. Exceptions :

- a. A vowel before *ß* or *ß* may be either long or short : *häß*, *Säß*, *Füß*.
- b. The vowel of many monosyllabic particles is irregularly short : *män*, *vön*, *zü*.
- c. There are numerous irregularities, many explained by derivation : *Mönd*, *Ärt*, *Tröst*, *Klöster*, *wört*.
- d. The quantity of the stem vowel is not affected by consonants added as endings : *leben*, *lebst*.

THE CONSONANTS

9. Consonants are classified according to the manner in which, and the place where, they are formed by the vocal organs. Consonants that are formed by arresting entirely the breath-impulse, as it passes through the vocal passage, are called stops ; such as are formed by the partial arrest of the breath-impulse, or the partial closing of the vocal passage, are called spirants, and may be continued as long as the breath-impulse lasts. If in the formation of a consonant the chords vibrate, the consonant is said to be

voiced; otherwise voiceless. Consonants formed by the lips are called labials; by the teeth, dentals; and by the palate, palatals. The nasals are sounded through the nose. The liquids are smooth, semi-vowel sounds.

10. Table of Consonants:

	STOPS		SPIRANTS		NASALS	LIQUIDS
	voiceless	voiced	voiceless	voiced		
Labials	p	b	f(v)	v	m	
Dentals	t (th)	d	s (hard), ʃ (soft)	z	n	l, r
Palatals	t (c, q)	g	ç	j	ŋ	

11. The Consonants:

b = *b*, when initial or medial: *Bein*, *bieten*.
 = *p*, when final in a word or root, or before a voiceless consonant: *ab*, *geliebt*.

c is rapidly disappearing in all but the less common foreign words, being supplanted by *t* and *z*:
 = *ts* before *ä*, *e*, *i*, *ö*, *ü*, *ŋ*: *Cäesar*; except in French words like *Raprice* where it = *s*.
 = *k* elsewhere: *Café*.

ç 1. After *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, is a guttural spirant and is formed like *k*, except that the vocal passage is not closed: *ach*, *Loch*.
 2. After other vowels, and after consonants, it is a palatal spirant, and is formed like the guttural spirant, except that it is made higher in the vocal passage: *ich*, *Milch*.

3. In foreign words:
 a. Before *ä*, *e*, *eu*, *i*, *äu*, *ö*, *ü*, it is like *z*: *Chemie*, *Chineze*.
 b. Before other vowels, and before consonants, it = *t*: *Chatter*.
 c. In French words, it = *ʃ*: *Chaussee*, *Chef*.

4. Before *s* of the same stem, it = *t*: *Ötgs*, *wadßen*.

ç = *tł*, and is so written when the word is divided into syllables: *bat-tən*.

d = *d*, when initial or medial: *Daumen*, *baben*.
 = *t*, when final in a word or root: *Tob*, *abends*.

dt = *t*: *Stadt*, *gewandt*.

f = f in *fun*: offen, Fuchs.
 g = g in *go*, when before a vowel or a voiced consonant: gehen, Glaube.
 = k in *king*, when final or before a voiceless consonant: Weg, sagte.
 = ɸ, when in the termination *ig*, but more like y in *yet* when a vowel follows: König, wenige (Hempl, 194).
 = z in *azure*, in words from the French: Orange, Page.
 h = h in *have*, when initial in a word or root: Herz, Weisheit.
 is silent, when medial or final in a word or root: stehen, roh.
 i = y in *yet*: Jahr, jetzt; except in a few French words like *Journal* where it = z in *azure*.
 t = k in *kin*: kalt, Kind.
 l = l in *land*: lieben, Leib.
 m = m in *man*: morgen, mein.
 n = n in *now*: nein, Name.
 ng = ng in *ringer*, never like the ng in *finger*: sang, Finger.
 nk = nk in *ink*: schwanken, denken.
 p = p in *pine*: Paar, plump.
 pf is formed by pronouncing p and f together rapidly, giving each, however, its full value, like pf in *helpful*: Pfanne, Pfropfen.
 ph is found only in foreign words where it = ph in *philosopher*: Photograph.
 q = t, and is always followed by u.
 qu = tw, the w being labialized, i.e. pronounced more like w: Quelle, quer.
 r = r in *run*, but trilled more: Herr, rauben.
 ſ, ʃ = 1. s in *so*, when final or after a voiceless consonant: Häus, wachsen.
 2. s in *easily*, when before a vowel and not after a voiceless consonant: Häuser, sehen.
 3. sh lightly pronounced, when preceding initial p or t: spät, stehen.
 sch = sh in *should*: Schule, rasch.
 ß = ss or ʃ, and is used except between two short vowels: besser, beßrer, Fuß; but in foreign words ss is used even when the second vowel is long: abrëssieren, Chaussee.
 t = t in *tin*: Tat; except before unaccented i + a vowel in foreign words, where it = ts: Nation.
 th = t, and is now found only in foreign words: Thron, Theater; but formerly appeared in tun, Tat, Tal, Tor, Träne, Tür, etc.

v = f in *fun*: vor, brav; except in a few foreign words when not final, where it = v: *Ravalier*.
 w = v in *van*, but is labialized (resembling w) after ſ̄ or ʒ: wenn, ſ̄hwingen.
 ʒ = x in *ax*: *Art*, *Hege*.
 ʒ = ts in *cats*: *Herz*, *Bange*.

12. Syllabication: A word has as many syllables as vowels or diphthongs: alt, Be-bräng-niſ. Consonants between the vowels are disposed of as follows:

- a. A single consonant or digraph, excepting ng and ʒ, belongs with the following vowel: ge-ben, rie-chen, Hit-ze.
- b. Of two or more consonants (excepting ſt, which combination is never separated), only the last goes with the following vowel; but the elements of a compound word must be kept intact: un-ter, be-ſter, Männ-chen; but fort-ei-ten.
- c. In foreign words a stop is usually not separated from a following liquid: elef-triſ-ſh.
- d. Syllables consisting of a single vowel are not separated: über.

ACCENT

13. Simple German words are generally accented on the first, or root, syllable.

14. In compound words —

- a. The inseparable prefixes (199) are never accented: betre'ten, verge'hen.
- b. The separable prefixes (202), and other parts of speech used as prefixes or in composition, are generally accented: an'kommen, haus'halten, mut'voll.

15. Exceptions :

- a. The following words are accented on the ultima :
- 1. Many foreign words, retaining generally their original accent : *Solbat', Natur', maliziöß', General', famos'.*
- 2. Nouns ending in the foreign suffixes *ei* or *ie* : *Brauerei', Philologie'.*
- 3. Compound particles : *davon', heraus', bergab', umher'.*
- 4. Verbs in *ieren* or *eien* : *spazie'ren, maledei'en* (189).
- b. A few adjectives like *leben'dig, leibhaf'tig, lutheri'sch* (also *Lu'the-risch, concerning Luther*), *mahrhaf'tig*, and foreign nouns like *Rafer'ne, Rater'ne*, etc., accent the second syllable.

16. Capitals : Capitals are used in the main as in English. However, in German capitalize —

- a. All nouns and words used as nouns : *die Stadt, the city ; das Gute, the good ; das Laufent, running ; das Einmaleins, the multiplication table (the one times one).* But nouns used as other parts of speech are not capitalized : *morgens, in the morning ; statt, instead of.*
- b. The personal pronoun *Sie, you*, and its possessive *Ihr, your*, to distinguish them from the third person.
- c. The personal pronouns of the second person, *Du* and *Ihr, you*, and their possessives *Dein* and *Euer, your*, when used in letters.
- 1. Proper adjectives used in a general sense, except indeclinables in *er* (264), are not capitalized : *amerika'nisch, American, lutheri'sch, Lutheran* ; but *Berli'ner, from Berlin, Wag'neri'sch, Wagnerian.*

17. Punctuation : The rules of punctuation are largely the same as in English ; hence only the differences need be pointed out.

- 1. The **period** is used to indicate the ordinal, and is omitted after abbreviations of coins and of expressions

of measure: *v. 15. Mai, the 15th [of] May (129, 1), 3 M* (Mark); *1 l* (Liter).

2. The **comma** is used —

- a. Between coördinate parts of a sentence unless connected by *und*, *wie*, *sowie*, *entweder . . . oder*, *sowohl . . . als auch*, *weder . . . noch*: *Männer, Frauen und Kinder, men, women, and children.*
- b. Between clauses not connected by *und*, except short infinitive clauses with *zu* where no ambiguity could arise :

Er starb

*Wie einer, der sich auf den Tod geübt,
Und warf das Liebste, was er hatte, von sich,
Als wär's unnützer Land.*

He died

*As one that had been studied in his death
To throw away the dearest thing he owed,
As 't were a careless trifle.*

MACBETH.

Bete, arbeite, tue recht und scheue niemand! *Pray, toil, do right, and fear no man.* *Er versprach am Sonntag zu kommen,* *He promised Sunday to come.* But *Er versprach, am Sonntag zu kommen,* *He promised to come Sunday.* However, a comma generally precedes *und* between two clauses which are not strictly coördinate: *Wist du ein Meister in Israel, und weißt das nicht?* *Art thou a master in Israel, and knowest not these things?* *Arbeite, und spiele nicht,* *Work, and (but) do not play.* Further, a comma precedes an infinitive with *zu* which is anticipated by a pleonastic pronoun, so that the infinitive is really an appositive: *Auch das muß man sich gefallen lassen, verspottet zu werden,* *One must also endure being ridiculed.*

- c. Before an infinitive governed by a preposition (272):
Wir essen, um zu leben, *We eat to live.*
- d. To point off a decimal: 15,1.

- e. Before a pleonastic pronoun or adverb which repeats an idea just expressed: *Bei euch dort unten in der ew'gen Nacht, da schlägt kein Herz mehr, Down there among you in everlasting night no heart beats any more.*
- f. To set off appositives: *der Kaiser, unser Herr, The emperor, our master.*
- 3. The colon is used —
- a. Before an explanatory appositive: *Eu, was man jetzt dich heißt: gib ihn heraus! Do as you are now commanded, give him up.*
- b. Before a thought that is a logical development of what precedes :

Die Wiese grünt, der Vogel baut,
 Der Kuckuck ruft, der Morgen taut,
 Das Veilchen blüht, die Lärche singt,
 Der Obstbaum prangt: der Frühling windt.

*The meadow is turning green, the bird is building his nest,
 The cuckoo cries, the morning is dewy,
 The violet blooms, the lark is singing,
 The fruit-tree is budding; spring is calling.*

- c. Before enumerations: *Die den alten Griechen bekannten Erdteile hießen: Europa, Asien und Libyen, The continents known to the ancient Greeks were called Europe, Asia, and Libya. And even Solche sind: Sena, Göttingen, Tübingen, Such are Jena, Göttingen, Tübingen.*
- 4. The exclamation point is used —
- a. After an exclamation, wish, or command: *Holla! Hello! Komm her zu mir! Come to me!*

b. After the salutation in letters or public addresses :
Lieber Sohn ! Dear Son, —.

5. **Quotation marks** are — „Aller Anfang ist schwer.“

6. The **hyphen** (=) is omitted in ordinary compounds : *Bücherstand*, *book-stall*; but is used to indicate the omission of an element that is common to two or more compounds : *bergauf und -ab*, *uphill and downhill*, instead of *bergauf und bergab*.

EXERCISES IN PRONUNCIATION

- ā Staat, Saal, Paar, Draht, gab, nah, blasen, Abend, da.
- ă Äpfel, Dach, fallen, Abt, Mann, dann, Hammer, Blatt, an, jammern.
- ä Täler, brächen, lähmen, grätig, Prägung, Säbel, ähnlich, während.
- ă Bälle, glänzen, hämmern, Äpfel, Hände, schärfen, tränken, ändern.
- ai Laie, Kaiser, Laib, Bai, Saite, Waise, Mai, Rain, Maid.
- au Auge, aus, Baum, lauen, lau, Haus, grau, Pause, saufen.
- äu Gebäude, Mäuse, Häuser, äußern, Räuber, läuten, Fräulein, säubern.
- b Bett, binden, ab, oben, Ebbe, gelobt, bei, lieblich, Erbe, Herbst.
- c Camera, Cicero, Conto, Sauce, Kaprice, Cour, Balance.
- ch ich, mich, wachsen, Christ, Chance, machen, Gesicht, Charge, Chor, Löcher, Flucht, Charak'ter, Küche, Chronik, rechts, Chemie', Dolch, Pech, Büch, Wicke, Milch, Champagn'er, auch, Lachs, noch, Chlor, Ochs, doch, China, Deichsel, Chirurg'.
- d Nacken, Fleck, Decke, backen, Ecke.
- d Mädchen, binden, bedeutend, ander, Wald, Band, abends, mündlich, dann.
- dt Stadt, bereit, lädt, gewandt, sandte.
- é Esel, Erde, Herb, ledig, jeder, Leh'm, Ehre, Leben, See, Beet.

ē Bett, Berg, helfen, erst, her, denn, Brett, lecken, Ende, Herr.
 ę Gebärde, wandeln, wandelte, wandern, wanderte, Rästen,
 jahrelang.
 ei ein, rein, Feind, leise, zwei, gleich, Polizei, heiter, Stein.
 eu Feuer, Freund, euer, leuchten, heute, reuen, Leute, Steuer.
 ę offen, Fenster, Affe, fein, Öfen, fünf, fahl, auf, liefern.
 ę gehen, Tage, liegen, groß, Honig, flugs, Flügel, geneigt, Wege,
 Roggen, regnete, glauben, Zwergen, morgen, sagen, Flug,
 gesägt, König, einige, Berg, mutig, fliegt.
 ę hier, stehen, ruhig, Schönheit, geheim, Thermometer.
 ī ihn, ihr, Bibel, sie, lieben, Bibel, isolie'ren, Item, wieder,
 Stil.
 ī Begriff, immer, Iltis, irdisch, Silbe, hin, mich, Bild, Sta'lien.
 ī jäh, jagen, Jahr, Journalist', Jugend, jung, jener.
 ę leck, Karte, klein, Kappe, kurz, Knoten, Knospe, Knie.
 ę Lahm, Halme, fallen, Palme, halb, Mulde, Hälfte, toll.
 ę mummeln, Mühme, Mulfm, müssen, munter, kommen.
 ę nun, nein, mein, Mund, Mann, Name, nennen.
 ę singen, fangen, ringen, Finger, Sängerin, Sprenger.
 ę sinken, denken, schwenken, danken, flink, dunkel, frank, dünkt.
 ę ohne, Mond, roh, Strom, Boot, hoch, Moos, wohl, oben,
 Kloster.
 ę Hochzeit, Loch, Dorf, Gold, voll, kommen, konnte, morgen,
 folgen, dort, Schloß, Post, glozen, Broß, Frost, Korn,
 Donner, wollte.
 ę Löwe, lösen, frönen, höher, Böbel, Röhre, schwören, mögen,
 Öfen.
 ę Förster, Löschen, Göze, zwölf, Frömmeling, Hölle, Löffel.
 ę Pest, Person', plump, peitschen, peinlich, Perle, piepsen, preisen.
 ę Pf Apfel, empfangen, empfehlen, Kampf, Dampfer, Knopf, Pflanze,
 Pfund, pfiff, Pfropfen.
 ę Ph Philosophie', Phantast', Phase, Phosphor, Photograph'.
 ę Qua Quaum, Quartier', Quelle, Quittung, quälen, quer, quädeln.

r Noß, hören, Rauch, Ort, rot, durch, reich, Regiment', froh, er.
 ſ, s es, Maſte, Rose, See, also, ſtehlen, Speiſe, Häuſchen, Stange,
 ſorgen, ſehn, ſpringen, ſorgſam, lieſt, geneſen, Binſe, Füchſe,
 Rätsel.

ſch ſchaffen, ſchreiten, Schuh, morſch, faſch.

ſſ laſſen, Näße, Eſſig, Riffen, ſchaffen, Schlöſſer, ruffiſch, Flüſſe.

ß näß, Mäß, grōß, Fuß, Flüß, reiſt, laſt, lieſen, reiſen.

t Tante, Tat, taub, Ton, Tinte, Nation', tot, Träne, Lektion',
 Patient'.

ß lebt, Müze, Neßen, jetzt, Spaß.

ü fuhr, Jugend, Uhr, Gruß, Mußme, hudeln, lud, grub, mutig,
 Gut.

ü Brunnen, Fluß, Turm, durch, ungern, Bruch, ſurren, gebrummt,
 hungrig, Mund, jung, und, nun, Puls, Suppe, uns.

ü wüst, üben, fühlen, Füße, übel, trübe, Mühe, lügen, Flügel,
 früh, prüfen, rühren, rühmen, für.

ü Brücke, Fülle, Müze, nützlich, Glück, lüſten, fünf, flüssig,
 plündern, zurück, dünn, küssen, Hülfe, Stück.

v brav, Perspektiv', von, voll, Vater, Beilchen, Verzicht, Better,
 Sklave.

w wann, wohnen, Wurm, zwingen, ſchwören, Wahl, Wagen,
 zwanzig, Schwelle.

z Bexier', Axt, Praxis, Erem'pel.

y Cylin'der, Hypothet', Myrte, Nymphe, Gymna'sium.

ž Zimmer, zu, Zeit, Arzt, Boll, ſiſen, ſcherzen.

INFLECTION

18. The parts of speech are —

- a. The noun, pronoun, adjective, and verb, which are variable or inflected.
- b. The particles, including the adverb, conjunction, preposition, and interjection, which are invariable or uninflected.

19. Inflection is variation in form to express different grammatical relations. This is done by adding endings to the stem, or by an internal vowel-change called ablaut. Umlaut rarely alone shows inflection.

20. The variation of a noun, pronoun, or adjective is called declension, and their different forms are called cases, which are further distinguished to express number. The variation of a verb is called conjugation.

21. There are four cases: the nominative, or direct case; the genitive, dative, and accusative, or oblique cases.

22. The nominative (241) expresses the relation of —

a. Subject of the verb: *Der Mann kommt*, *The man is coming*.

b. Predicate after certain intransitive and passive verbs: *Er ist der Vater*, *He is the father*.

23. The genitive (242) expresses the relation of complement of a noun, limiting or defining its meaning: *Dieser Teil der Stadt ist neu*, *This part of the city is new*.

24. The dative (243) expresses the relation of indirect object of the verb: *Er gibt dem Bruder das Buch*, *He gives the book to his brother*.

25. The accusative (244) expresses the relation of direct object of the verb: *Wir sehen das Haus*, *We see the house*.

26. These are the simpler uses of the cases. In addition, any oblique case may be governed by a preposition without regard for its regular force (35, 44, 45): *Er geht in das Haus mit dem Manne. He goes into the house with the man.*

27. **Gender:** There are three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. When the gender of a noun is determined by its sex (male, female, or neither) it is said to be *natural*; when it is determined by custom or rule of grammar (91) regardless of sex, it is called *grammatical*.

1. Thus we should expect *der Mann, the man*, to be masculine, and *das Holz, the wood*, to be neuter; therefore their gender is natural. However, a rule of grammar provides that all nouns ending in *chen* or *lein* shall be neuter (91, a), so that *das Fräulein, the young lady*, and *das Mädchen, the girl*, are neuter regardless of their sex. So also has custom made *das Weib, the woman*, neuter.

28. The Definite Article:

	Singular			Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F. N.
N.	der	die	das	die	<i>the</i>
G.	des	der	des	der	<i>of the</i>
D.	dem	der	dem	den	<i>to the</i>
A.	den	die	das	die	<i>the</i>

1. For the principal uses of the definite article see 239.

29. The endings of *der*, with *e* instead of *ie* and *es* instead of *aß*, are the regular adjective endings (108):

	Singular			Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F. N.
N.	er	e	es	e	
G.	es	er	es	er	
D.	em	er	em	en	
A.	en	e	es	e	

30. The Indefinite Article :

Singular			Plural	
M.	F.	N.	M.	F. N.
N. ein -	ein e	ein -	—	a
G. ein es	ein er	ein es	—	of a
D. ein em.	ein er	ein em	—	to a
A. ein en	ein e	ein -	—	a

31. The indefinite article is a weakened numeral (126). It is used generally as in English; but it is omitted before an unqualified noun denoting station or calling, which is used as predicate, or after als: *Sch bin Soldat, I am a soldier*; but *Sch bin ein armer Soldat, I am a poor soldier*.

32. The Present Indicative of *haben*, *to have*, and *sein*, *to be*:

S. ich habe	I have	ich bin	I am
du hast	thou hast	du bist	thou art
er hat	he has	er ist	he is
P. wir haben	we have	wir sind	we are
ihr habt	you have	ihr seid	you are
sie haben	they have	sie sind	they are

33. The endings of *haben* are the regular endings of the present indicative (172), and should be added directly to the stem, which may be obtained by dropping the (e)n of the infinitive (166). It will be seen that *haben* has the same irregularities as the English *have*, while *sein*, like English *be*, is quite irregular.

1. The German has no progressive or emphatic verb forms like *I am going, I do not want*. Such forms are translated simply by the present tense; *I was going, I did not want*, by the past tense.

2. For the use of the pronoun of the second person see 138.

DRILL I

Conjugate the present indicative of *besuchen*, *to visit*; *gehen*, *to go*; *kommen*, *to come*; *stehen*, *to stand*.

EXERCISE I

1. Ich habe einen Bruder und eine Schwester. 2. Der Bruder ist Lehrer, nicht Arbeiter. 3. Er besucht den Vater und die Mutter im (in dem) Winter. 4. Wir gehen im Sommer ins (in das) Gebirge. 5. Wir haben dort ein Häuschen. 6. Der Lehrer hat auch ein Häuschen im Gebirge. 7. Er hat einen Vater und eine Mutter. 8. Sie gehen aber nicht ins Gebirge.

He goes; I do not come; you are standing; we visit; I am going; they do not come; thou standest; ye have.

1. The cottage is in the mountains. 2. We go there in summer. 3. He is not a teacher. 4. But he is a working-man. 5. He has a brother, but not a sister. 6. His brother goes to the mountains in summer. 7. His brother is also a teacher. 8. We are visiting our (the) mother in the mountains. 9. He has a cottage, but he visits his father.

VOCABULARY

aber, *coörd. conj.* but, however
 der Arbeiter, the workingman
 auch, *adv.* also, too
 der Bruder, the brother
 dahin, *adv.* there, thither
 dort, *adv.* there, yonder
 das Gebirge, the mountains (*coll.*)
 das Häuschen, the little house, cottage
 in, *prep.* in, into, to

kein, *pron. adj.* not a, no
 der Lehrer, the teacher
 die Mutter, the mother
 nicht, *adv.* not
 die Schwester, the sister
 der Sommer, the summer
 und, *coörd. conj.* and
 der Vater, the father
 der Winter, the winter

PREPOSITIONS

34. Prepositions are used to show the relation in the sentence of one word to another. They may govern any of the oblique cases.

35. The following prepositions govern either the dative or the accusative :

<i>an, at, on, alongside, to</i>	<i>neben, beside, close to, next</i>
<i>auf, on, upon</i>	<i>über, over, above</i>
<i>hinter, behind</i>	<i>unter, under, below, among</i>
<i>in, in, into, to</i>	<i>vor, before, in front of, ago</i>
	<i>zwischen, between</i>

36. Prepositions which govern either the dative or the accusative govern the dative when the verb expresses no change of relative position ; otherwise the accusative.

1. Thus, in *He walks in the garden*, the relation between, or the relative position of, *he* and *garden* is not represented as changing ; hence the preposition *in* would govern the dative. But in *He walks into the garden* the relation between *he* and *garden* is represented as changing, and *in* would govern the accusative.

37. Adverbs, and adverbial phrases, of time precede those of place (88) : *Wir kommen am achten Dezember nach Hause*, *We are coming home on the eighth of December*; *Sie gehen morgen fort*, *They are going away to-morrow*.

DRILL II

Conjugate the present indicative of *loben*, *to praise* ; *machen*, *to make* ; *ziehen*, *to draw* ; *hören*, *to hear* ; *holen*, *to fetch* ; *suchen*, *to look for* ; *wohnen*, *to dwell* ; *liegen*, *to lie* ; *bleiben*, *to remain* ; *denken*, *to think*.

EXERCISE II

1. Wir wohnen nicht im Dörfchen.
2. Das Leben ist dort nicht interessant.
3. Das Wetter ist auch im Sommer sehr warm.
4. Wir wohnen im Winter in der Stadt, und gehen im Sommer ins Gebirge.
5. Das Wetter ist dort nicht so warm.
6. Er hat ein Häuschen im Dörfchen.
7. Das Häuschen steht vor einem Garten.
8. Die Arbeiter in dieser Stadt sind Amerikaner.
9. Über der Vater ist kein Amerikaner.
10. Wir gehen in den Garten.
11. Die Mutter ist aber nicht im Garten.

Upon a cottage; alongside the garden; behind the little village; I am walking (gehen) behind the workingman into the city; he stands in front of his (the) father, and between his brother and sister; we are going into the garden; in front of the city; beside this cottage; to no teacher; next to the workingman.

1. We live in the mountains in (the) summer.
2. We go to (into the) town in winter.
3. The cottage stands in a garden.
4. We are going into the cottage.
5. He is standing in the garden in front of the cottage.
6. I am going to the mountains.
7. They are coming into the garden.
8. We have a garden in the mountains.
9. Life in a city is very interesting.
10. He is visiting his father in a small village.

VOCABULARY

der Amerika'ner, the American
 dies, *pron. adj.* this
 das Dörfchen, the small village
 der Garten, the garden
 interessant, *adj.* interesting
 das Leben, the life

sehr, *adv.* very, much
 so, *adv.* thus, so, as
 die Stadt, the town, city
 warm, *adj.* warm
 das Wetter, the weather
 wohnen, to live, dwell, reside

THE NOUN

38. There are three declensions of the noun, the Strong, the Weak, and the Mixed. They differ in the formation of the genitive singular and the nominative plural as follows:

	GEN. SING.	NOM. PL.
Strong	(e)s or -	-, e, or er
Weak	(e)n or -	(e)n
Mixed	(e)s	(e)n

39. The nominative singular never has an ending, and is thus the same as the stem. This case, together with the genitive singular and the nominative plural, which show the difference between the three declensions and from which all other cases may be formed, constitutes the *principal parts* of the noun.

40. Noun Endings:

	STRONG	WEAK	MIXED
Sing. N.	-	-	-
G.	(e)s or -	(e)n or -	(e)s
D.	(e) or -	(e)n or -	(e)
A.	-	(e)n or -	-
Plur. N.	-, e, er	(e)n	(e)n
G.	-, e, er	(e)n	(e)n
D.	(n), en, eru	(e)n	(e)n
A.	-, e, er	(e)n	(e)n

i. The (e) is not a necessary part of the ending, its presence being determined by euphony. In the genitive singular of the strong noun, whether to add it or not is often a matter of taste, the longer form belonging to more elevated style; however, the e is more usual in monosyllables, less usual in polysyllables. In monosyllables the e is regularly found after a short vowel and is preferable even after a long vowel: *Berge*s, but *Jahres* or *Jahr*s. In polysyllables the e is

never added after unaccented *el*, *em*, *en*, *er*: *Mantel*s, *Vater*s; after other unaccented terminations it is rarely added: *Früttums*, *Jünglings*; after accented syllables the rule for monosyllables applies.

2. The dative singular is formed regularly by dropping the *s* of the genitive. But the *e* of the dative is generally omitted when the noun is in apposition with a word expressing measure (182): *in einem Klumpen Gold*, *in a lump of gold*; and when the noun is preceded immediately by a preposition or followed by a word beginning with a vowel: *von Haus zu Haus*, *dem Kind erzählte ich*.

3. In addition to endings in the plural, some strong nouns are further distinguished from the singular by the umlaut: *der Vater*, *die Mutter*; *das Haus*, *die Häuser*.

4. It will be seen that, whereas all strong nouns form their singular in the same way, their plural may be formed in one of three different ways, which gives rise to three classes in the Strong Declension (47).

41. General Rules:

- a.* Feminine nouns are invariable in the singular (81).
- b.* Feminines and neuters of all parts of speech are alike in the nominative and accusative singular.
- c.* The nominative, genitive, and accusative plural of nouns are always alike.
- d.* The dative plural always ends in *n*, which is added to the nominative plural when the nominative does not already end in *n*.
- e.* The classification of a noun is determined by its gender, the number of syllables, and the termination of its stem.
- f.* Compound nouns take their gender and declension from the last element (92).

THE STRONG DECLENSION

42. Strong nouns form their genitive singular by adding (*e*)*s* to the stem; the dative by dropping the *s* of the genitive; the accusative like the nominative. But feminines do not vary in the singular (81).

43. Declension in the singular of *der Vater, the father*; *die Stadt, the town*; *das Fundament, the foundation*; *der Sohn, the son*; *die Mutter, the mother*; *das Floß, the raft*:

Sing. N.	<i>der Vater</i> —	<i>die Stadt</i> —	<i>das Fundament</i> —
G.	<i>des Vater</i> s	<i>der Stadt</i> —	<i>des Fundament</i> s
D.	<i>dem Vater</i> —	<i>der Stadt</i> —	<i>dem Fundament</i> —
A.	<i>den Vater</i> —	<i>die Stadt</i> —	<i>das Fundament</i> —
Sing. N.	<i>der Sohn</i> —	<i>die Mutter</i> —	<i>das Floß</i> —
G.	<i>des Sohn</i> es	<i>der Mutter</i> —	<i>des Floß</i> es
D.	<i>dem Sohn</i> e	<i>der Mutter</i> —	<i>dem Floß</i> e
A.	<i>den Sohn</i> —	<i>die Mutter</i> —	<i>das Floß</i> —

DRILL III

Decline in the singular —

der Atem, Ballen, Geist, Gemahl, Herbst, Herzog, Kaiser, Marmor, Rand, Ritter, Schild, Spaten, Winter, Zögling.

die Besorgnis, Drangsal, Gruft, Kenntnis, Macht, Mutter, Naht, Tochter, Zucht.

das Bein, Bett, Blättchen, Fest, Gesicht, Gewölbe, Heer, Hospital, Kloster, Recht, Regiment, Stück, Wort, Zeug.

Conjugate the present indicative of —

danken, fragen, heilen, riechen, spinnen, stellen, trinken.

EXERCISE III

1. Der Bruder besucht den Vater und die Mutter des Mädchens.
2. Der Bruder ist Lehrer. 3. Er wohnt in dem Häuschen eines Arbeiters. 4. Das Haus meines Bruders steht in einem Garten.
5. Der Mann hat ein Kind, ein Mädchen. 6. Das Leben eines Lehrers ist interessant. 7. Das Mädchen hat einen Bruder. 8. Er kommt in den Garten, und dann ins Haus. 9. Die Mutter geht in das Häuschen des Lehrers. 10. Sie wohnen dort im Häuschen.
11. Das Häuschen hat auch einen Garten.

Of a house; I am in the garden; above the house; the convent's garden; to a man's house; a garden behind a house; to my child; for my child; they stand in front of his house; a man and a girl; to Americans; on the buildings; of the city; beside the convent; we live in this house; next to the garden.

1. The father of this girl lives in the cottage yonder.
2. The girl's brother is not a teacher.
3. He lives in the city, but he visits his mother in the little village.
4. The building in the garden is a cottage.
5. I am not the brother of this girl.
6. He is coming into the house.
7. The girl's father is not a workingman.
8. He has a house in the city, and behind his house a garden.
9. The building there in the mountains is a convent.
10. The brother of my teacher is standing yonder in the garden.
11. He lives in a small house in the mountains.
12. But he comes and visits his brother in winter.

VOCABULARY

dann, *adv.* then

das Mädchen, the girl, maid

das Gebäude, the building

der Mann, the man, husband

das Haus, the house

mein, *pron. adj.* my

das Kind, the child

sein, *pron. adj.* his, its

das Kloster, the convent, cloister

PREPOSITIONS

44. The following prepositions govern the dative case only :

<i>aus, out of, from</i> (within),	<i>mit, with</i> (company, means)
<i>of</i> (origin, material)	<i>nach, after, to</i> (destination), <i>towards</i>
<i>außer, out of, besides</i>	<i>seit, since</i>
<i>bei, near, by</i> (nearness),	<i>von, from</i> (without), <i>of, by</i> (agent)
<i>with, at the house of</i>	<i>zu, to</i> (destination), <i>at, for</i> (purpose)

45. The following prepositions govern the accusative case only :

<i>bis</i> (generally with <i>an, auf, in, etc.</i>),	<i>gegen, to, towards, against</i>
<i>till, until, as far as</i>	<i>ohne, without</i>
<i>durch, through, by</i> (means)	<i>um, about, round, at</i> (time)
<i>für, for</i> (interest, exchange)	<i>wider, against</i> (opposition)

46. Certain prepositions may be contracted with the unemphatic article. The usual contractions are, *am* (*an dem*), *beim*, *im*, *vom*, *zum*; *zur* (*zu der*); *ans* (*an das*), *aufs*, *durchs*, *fürs*, *ins*, *ums*, *vors*.

DRILL IV

Decline in the singular —

der Arm, Becher, Boden, Kanal, König, Mann, Morgen, Onkel, Pfennig, Platz, Schluß, Schmetterling, Termin, Vertrag, Vormund, Zahn, Zwerg.

die Bank, Erlaubnis, Kuh, Mühsal, Not, Tochter.

das Alter, Bild, Dußend, Eigentum, Gemälde, Gesetz, Gespenst, Glas, Männchen, Opfer, Panier, Rätsel, Schicksal, Schloß, Siegel, Tor, Wesen.

Conjugate the present indicative of —

dienen, frieren, fühlen, glauben, greifen, kaufen.

EXERCISE IV

1. Ein Fräulein aus der Stadt wohnt in dem Kloster.
2. Das Kloster steht nahe beim Wasser.
3. Die Stadt hat einen Park für den Arbeiter.
4. Die Tochter des Arbeiters geht ins Kloster.
5. Er geht mit meinem Vater durch den Garten.
6. Wir kommen morgen nach Hause.
7. Ich gebe dem Vater ein Buch.
8. Er geht im Garten ohne Hut.
9. Der Garten hinter dem Kloster gehört meinem Bruder.
10. Der Park dort gehört der Stadt.

They go into the house; as far as the garden; for my brother; to his brother; I give the man a book; through the house; out of the convent; are they not in the garden? near the mountains; into the water; from my brother; with his daughter's hat; through a man's house; after the girl; we are going home; I am my father's daughter; are you in the house?

1. The young lady is a daughter of my teacher. 2. She is going to (the) town with my father. 3. But she is coming home to-morrow. 4. We give his sister a book. 5. This building belongs to a workingman. 6. I have in the house a hat for this child. 7. We are visiting the brother, but not the sister. 8. The water in the park is very warm. 9. I am going through the city to-morrow. 10. I live there with my brother. 11. The convent stands in the park close to my father's house.

VOCABULARY

das Buch, the book

morgen, *adv.* to-morrow

das Fräulein, the young lady, miss

nach Hause, *phrase*, home(ward)

geben, to give

nah(e), *adj.* near, close to

gehören, *dat.* to belong

der Park, the park

der Hut, the hat

die Tochter, the daughter

das Wasser, the water

The First Class

47. As has been seen (42), all strong nouns form their singular alike, but their plural may be formed in three different ways: by adding no ending, e, or er. Hence we have three classes of the Strong Declension, alike in the singular, but differing in the formation of the nominative plural.

48. To the First Class belong masculines and neuters ending in el, en, or er, and the feminines *Mutter* and *Tochter*; diminutives in *chen* or *lein*, which are all neuter; and neuters with the prefix *ge* and the suffix *e*.

49. Nouns of the First Class form their nominative plural without additional ending; but 15 masculines with the root vowel a (51), also *Boden*, *Öfen*, *Vogel*, and *Bruder*, the feminines *Mutter* and *Tochter*, and the neuter *Kloster* add the umlaut.

50. The nominative, genitive, and accusative plural are always alike, and the dative is formed by adding n to the nominative plural, unless that already ends in n (41).

51. The masculines with the root vowel a which umlaut in the plural (49) are *Ader*, *Apfel*, *Garten*, *Graben*, *Hafen*, *Hammer*, *Handel*, *Leben*, *Mangel*, *Mantel*, *Nagel*, *Sattel*, *Schnabel*, *Schwager*, *Vater*.

52. Declension of *der Hafen*, *the harbor*; *die Mutter*, *the mother*; *das Gestade*, *the shore*:

Sing. N.	<i>der Hafen</i> –	<i>die Mutter</i> –	<i>das Gestade</i> –
G.	<i>des Hafen</i> s	<i>der Mutter</i> –	<i>des Gestade</i> s
D.	<i>dem Hafen</i> –	<i>der Mutter</i> –	<i>dem Gestade</i> –
A.	<i>den Hafen</i> –	<i>die Mutter</i> –	<i>das Gestade</i> –
Plur.	N. <i>die Häfen</i> –	<i>die Mütter</i> –	<i>die Gestade</i> –
	G. <i>der Häfen</i> –	<i>der Mütter</i> –	<i>der Gestade</i> –
	D. <i>den Häfen</i> –	<i>den Mütter</i> n	<i>den Gestade</i> n
	A. <i>die Häfen</i> –	<i>die Mütter</i> –	<i>die Gestade</i> –

53. Simple adverbs precede adverbial phrases (83): *Er liegt immer auf dem Boden, He always lies on the floor.*

DRILL V

Decline —

der Adler, Apfel, Bissen, Boden, Bruder, Daumen, Engel, Faden,
Finger, Garten, Handel, Kuchen, Laden, Mangel, Morgen,
Nagel, Ofen, Reiter, Sattel, Vogel, Winter, Zauber.
die Mutter, Tochter.

das Alter, Bäumchen, Beutlein, Bündel, Fenster, Fräulein,
Gebäude, Gefinde, Gewölbe, Kirchlein, Kloster, Leben, Mäd-
chen, Opfer, Rätsel, Wasser, Wesen, Zeichen, Zimmer.

Conjugate the present indicative of —

freuen, heben, liegen, rufen, singen, weinen.

EXERCISE V

1. Sie ist die Mutter der Mädchen. 2. Dieser Onkel ist der Bruder meiner Mutter. 3. Er kommt morgen, und geht dann mit der Mutter zu seiner Tochter. 4. Seine Tochter ist jetzt in einem Kloster. 5. Ich habe zwei Brüder, aber sie wohnen nicht hier. 6. Die Gebäude dort mit dem Garten gehören meinen Brüdern. 7. Es sind in diesem Dorfe viele Arbeiter. 8. Sie wohnen meistens in den Häuschen beim Kloster. 9. Hinter den Häuschen ist auch ein Garten für die Arbeiter. 10. Es sind allerlei Vögel in diesem Garten. 11. Viele Arbeiter arbeiten im Sommer im Gebirge, aber das Wetter ist dort im Winter zu kalt.

I am my father's daughter. You hear too much. We see only birds. My father is standing near the house. We are not working now. There is; there are; it is. She is my mother. Do you not come home? Two brothers. Every house in this town. I am going behind the convent. We are giving my sister this book.

1. Every workingman has a cottage. 2. There are not many rooms in these cottages, and each room has only one window. 3. But they are very comfortable, and they are also warm in winter. 4. Behind many cottages are gardens. 5. I go into the gardens of the workingmen very often. 6. There are all kinds of birds there in summer. 7. I have a room in the cottage of a workingman. 8. The rooms of these cottages have generally only one window, but my room has two. 9. I see the mountains from my window, and in the mountains a convent. 10. I go to the mountains very often in summer.

VOCABULARY

allerlei, *indecl. adj.* all kinds of

arbeiten, to work

bequem, *adj.* convenient, comfort-

able

es, *expletive*, there

das Fenster, the window

hier, *adv.* here

jed-, *pron. adj.* each, every

jetzt, *adv.* now

kalt, *adj.* cold

meistens, *adv.* mostly, generally

nur, *adv.* only

oft, *adv.* often

der Onkel, the uncle

sie, *pr. she*

viel, *pron. adj.* much, many

der Vogel, the bird

das Zimmer, the room

zu, *adv.* too

zwei, *num. adj.* two

WORD LIST I

The following list of words will be found useful for reviews of various kinds, whether of the vocabulary, inflections, or the grammatical points suggested. The words are taken entirely from the preceding special vocabularies or lists of words, and only such words as are frequently used.

aber	Häuschen	ohne
arbeiten	hier	Onkel
Arbeiter	hinter	Paar
auch	Hut	Schwester
aus	in	sehr
bei	interessant	sein
besuchen	jed-	sie
Bruder	jetzt	so
Buch	kalt	Sommer
dann	kein	Stadt
dies	Kind	stehen
Dorf	Kloster	Tochter
Dörfchen	kommen	und
dort	Leben	unter
durch	Lehrer	Vater
ein	Mädchen	viel
es	Mann	Vogel
Fenster	mein	von
Fräulein	mit	vor
für	Morgen	warm
Garten	morgen	Wasser
Gebäude	Mutter	Wetter
geben	nach	Winter
Gebirge	nahe	wohnen
gehen	nicht	Zimmer
gehören	nur	zu
Haus	oft	zwei

The Second Class

54. To the Second Class belong most masculine and some neuter monosyllables (249); most masculine and neuter polysyllables; 30 umlautable feminine monosyllables (248); and feminines in *niß* or *ſal* (58).

55. Nouns of the Second Class form their nominative plural by adding *e*; and of the monosyllables most masculines, all feminines, and the neuter *Chor* add the umlaut.

56. Neuter monosyllables in *r*, except *Öhr* (257), belong to this class: *Jahr*, *Paar*, *Rohr*.

57. Some of the important masculine monosyllables (247) that do not umlaut are *Arm*, *Hund*, *Pfad*, *Schuh*, *Tag*.

58. Nouns in *niß* or *ſal* are nearly all neuter, and thus, being polysyllables, belong to Class II. Therefore the few that are feminine have retained their strong declension, instead of the declension of most feminine polysyllables: *die Rennniß*, *der Rennniß*, *die Rennniſſe*.

59. Neuter monosyllables are not readily classified, there being no apparent basis of classification. The most important in the Second Class (249) are *Bein*, *Ding*, *Pferd*, *Pfund*, *Recht*, *Reich*, *Schiff*, *Stück*.

60. The *s* of the termination *niß* is doubled before an ending: *das Gleichniß*, *des Gleichniſſes*, *die Gleichniſſe*.

61. A double vowel is simplified when umlauted: *der Saal*, *die Säle*.

62. Declension of *der Abend*, *the evening*; *die Hand*, *the hand*; *das Jahr*, *the year*:

Sing. N.	<i>der Abend</i> -	<i>die Hand</i> -	<i>das Jahr</i> -
G.	<i>des Abend</i> <i>s</i>	<i>der Hand</i> -	<i>des Jahr</i> <i>eß</i>
D.	<i>dem Abend</i> -	<i>der Hand</i> -	<i>dem Jahr</i> <i>e</i>
A.	<i>den Abend</i> -	<i>die Hand</i> -	<i>das Jahr</i> -
Plur. N.	<i>die Abend</i> <i>e</i>	<i>die Händ</i> <i>e</i>	<i>die Jahr</i> <i>e</i>
G.	<i>der Abend</i> <i>e</i>	<i>der Händ</i> <i>e</i>	<i>der Jahr</i> <i>e</i>
D.	<i>den Abend</i> <i>en</i>	<i>den Händ</i> <i>en</i>	<i>den Jahr</i> <i>en</i>
A.	<i>die Abend</i> <i>e</i>	<i>die Händ</i> <i>e</i>	<i>die Jahr</i> <i>e</i>

WORD-ORDER

63. There are three kinds of word-order or sentence-arrangement,—normal, inverted, and transposed,—differing from each other in the position of the verb. In normal order the verb follows the subject: *Der König ist auch ein Mensch*, *The king is also human*. In inverted order the verb precedes the subject: *Dann kommt er wieder*, *Then he will come again*. In transposed order the verb is placed at the end of its clause: *Der Baum, welcher keine Früchte trägt, wird umgehauen*, *The tree that bears no fruit is cut down*.

64. The basis of order is the clause, which is either dependent or independent. An independent clause may be either declarative, interrogative, or imperative. A declarative clause is one that states a thing as a fact: *Ich habe drei Brüder*, *I have three brothers*. An interrogative clause is one that expresses a question: *Kommen Sie mit?* *Are you coming along?* An imperative clause is one that expresses a command: *Gehen Sie gleich*, *Go at once*.

65. The order of an independent clause is either normal or inverted, depending upon which element (the subject or the adjunct of the verb) introduces it, or whether it expresses a question or a command: *Er kommt morgen wieder*, or *Morgen kommt er wieder*, *He is coming again to-morrow*; *Hat er mein Buch?* *Has he my book?* The order of a dependent clause is generally transposed (158): *Lehre andere nicht, bis du selbst gelehret bist*, *Do not teach others until you have taught yourself*.

1. An adjunct of the verb is any word, phrase, or clause which modifies the verb: *In diesem Hause ist er nicht*, *He is not in this house*; *Wenn er kommt, sage ich es ihm*, *I shall tell him when he comes*.

66. The following table will explain the order of an independent clause :

Independent Clause	Normal :	when the subject begins its clause, the coördinating conjunctions und, oder, denn, sondern, allein', and aber not affecting the order.
	Inverted :	
	(a)	when an adjunct of the verb introduces its clause.
	(b)	to express { (1) a question. (2) a command.

67. Definite time and duration of time are expressed by the accusative case (244, g) : *Noch diese Nacht muß er Madrid verlassen, He must leave Madrid this very night ; Wir wollen den ganzen Tag warten, We will wait all (the whole) day.*

DRILL VI

Decline —

der Abend, Arm, Beutel, Bezirk, Bock, Busen, Cidam, Falkenier, Felsen, Gast, Günsling, Hammer, Juwelier, Kampf, Major, Mantel, Passagier, Pfad, Pfennig, Pfosten, Raum, Schlummer, Tag, Termin, Wunsch.

die Angst, Bedrägnis, Braut, Drangsal, Erlaubnis, Flucht, Hand, Kenntnis, Maus, Mühsal, Mutter, Stadt, Trübsal, Tochter.

das Banner, Beet, Bildnis, Blättchen, Ding, Futter, Gebet, Gebinde, Gedächtnis, Häuschen, Heer, Kindlein, Klavier, Labsal, Luder, Männchen, Panier, Pferd, Recht, Rohr, Sausen, Turnier, Ufer, Verhältnis, Zitat.

EXERCISE VI

1. Auf einem Berge nahe dem Flusse steht unser Sommerhäuschen.
2. Es hat viele Zimmer.
3. Ein Zimmer gehört meinem

Bruder. 4. In diesem Zimmer sind ein Tisch und zwei Stühle. 5. Wir wohnen zwei Monate des Jahres in diesem Hause. 6. Auf dem Flusse haben wir einen Kahn. 7. Am Abend gehen wir oft in unserem Kahn auf den Fluss. 8. Stehen viele Bäume um das Häuschen? 9. Ja, und hinter dem Häuschen ist ein Garten. 10. Am Tage sind die Vögel im Garten. 11. Im Flusse sind allerlei Fische, und oft fangen wir viele. 12. In den Wintermonaten ist das Wetter hier sehr kalt. 13. Sehen Sie den Vogel dort im Garten? 14. Er kommt jeden Morgen und singt unter meinem Fenster.

1. This is the way (in)to the mountains. 2. Often I go to the mountains, and from there I see the river and the little villages. 3. Here the weather is very pleasant, but in town it is too warm. 4. The son of this man is a friend of my brother. 5. On the hill near the road stands a tree, and in this tree we often see an eagle in summer. 6. The eagle is the king of (the) birds. 7. He comes to the mountains every summer. 8. But the winter is too cold here for birds. 9. There are many trees in our town. 10. Is he the son of this workingman?

VOCABULARY

der Abend, the evening	der Kahn, the (row)boat
der Adler, the eagle	der König, the king
angenehm, <i>adj.</i> pleasant	der Monat, the month
der Baum, the tree	der Morgen, the morning
der Berg, the hill, mountain	sehen, to see
es, <i>pr.</i> it	singen, to sing
fangen, to catch	der Sohn, the son
der Fisch, the fish	der Stuhl, the chair
der Fluss, the river	der Tag, the day
der Freund, the friend	der Tisch, the table
ja, <i>adv.</i> yes	unser, <i>pron. adj.</i> our
das Jahr, the year	der Weg, the way, road

The Third Class

68. To the Third Class belong most neuter monosyllables (252), and 8 masculines (Geist, Gott, Leib, Mann, Ort, Rand, Walb, and Wurm); nouns in *tum*, which are all neuter except *der Irrtum* and *der Reichtum*; and 8 other neuter polysyllables (251).

69. Nouns of the Third Class form their nominative plural by adding *er*, and umlauting whenever possible (2).

70. Nouns in *tum* are umlauted on the *tum*, which was originally a monosyllable: *der Irrtum*, *die Irrtümer*.

71. Neuter monosyllables (252) in *d*, except *Hemd* (257), *Pferd*, and *Pfund* (59), belong to this class: *Kind*, *Kleid*, *Feld*.

72. Compounds of *Mann* form two plurals,—*Männer*, denoting individuals, *Leute*, denoting a class: *der Kaufmann*, *the merchant*, *die Kaufmänner*, *individual merchants*, *die Kaufleute*, *merchants as a guild or class*. *Wort* forms two plurals: *Worte* (connected words) and *Wörter* (disconnected words); *das Band* forms both *Bänder*, *ribbons*, and *Bande*, *fetters*; and *das Tuch* forms also the plural *Tüche*, *kinds of cloth*.

73. Declension of *der Rand*, *the edge*; *das Heiligtum*, *the sanctum*; *das Kind*, *the child*:

Sing. N.	<i>der Rand</i> —	<i>das Heiligtum</i> —	<i>das Kind</i> —
G.	<i>des Rand</i> <i>es</i>	<i>des Heiligtum</i> <i>s</i>	<i>des Kind</i> <i>es</i>
D.	<i>dem Rand</i> <i>e</i>	<i>dem Heiligtum</i> —	<i>dem Kind</i> <i>e</i>
A.	<i>den Rand</i> —	<i>das Heiligtum</i> —	<i>das Kind</i> —
Plur. N.	<i>die Ränd</i> <i>er</i>	<i>die Heiligtüm</i> <i>er</i>	<i>die Kind</i> <i>er</i>
G.	<i>der Ränd</i> <i>er</i>	<i>der Heiligtüm</i> <i>er</i>	<i>der Kind</i> <i>er</i>
D.	<i>den Ränd</i> <i>ern</i>	<i>den Heiligtüm</i> <i>ern</i>	<i>den Kind</i> <i>ern</i>
A.	<i>die Ränd</i> <i>er</i>	<i>die Heiligtüm</i> <i>er</i>	<i>die Kind</i> <i>er</i>

74. The Past Tense: The sign of past time of many German verbs is *t* (176), just as in English it is *d*, and the

personal endings are e, est, e, en, et, en. Thus the past tense of *loben*, *to praise*, is —

I praised, I was praising, I did praise, etc.

ich lob te	wir lob ten
du lob test	ihr lob tet
er lob te	sie lob ten

1. But notice that the past tense of *haben* is *hatte*, not *habe*, just as in English it is *had*, not *haved*.

DRILL VII

Decline —

der Augenblick, Barbier, Bogen, Donner, Esel, Fähnrich, Geist, Herzog, Irrtum, Junker, Kanon, Mann, Offizier, Saal, Schaden, Schatz, Sohn, Stamm, Teppich, Tropfen, Vater, Wald, Böbling, Zug.

die Bank, Befugnis, Brust, Fäulnis, Frucht, Haut, Kuh, Magd, Nacht, Schwulst, Tochter, Wildnis.

das Altertum, Becherlein, Boot, Buch, Bündnis, Dicke, Eigentum, Feuer, Fürstentum, Gebirge, Gesetz, Gespräch, Glas, Haar, Herzogtum, Hindernis, Jahr, Kämmerlein, Kind, Liebchen, Papier, Pfand, Quartier, Rad, Rittertum, Ruder, Schiff, Steinchen, Telegramm, Tier, Wort, Wunder.

Conjugate the past indicative of —

brauchen, drehen, eilen, fällen, lieben, machen, rauben, stellen.

EXERCISE VII

- Das Haus auf dem Berge gehört einem Manne aus jenem Dorfe.
- Der Weg zu dem Hause geht durch Täler und über Berge.
- Das Haus steht am Rande des Waldes.
- Der Mann kaufte es von einem Freunde meines Vaters.
- Er wohnte ein Jahr in jenem Dörfchen, aber jetzt wohnt er hier.
- Der Mann ist der Vater von zwei Kindern, zwei Mädchen.
- Er hatte auch

einen Sohn, aber er ist tot. 8. Gestern sagte ich zu meiner Mutter: „Mutter, wo ist mein Buch?“ 9. „Ich habe es nicht; das Buch ist nicht mein Eigentum,“ sagte sie dann.

With these books; for the fish; in the year; near the house; from the man; upon the tree; under the table; through the woods; my father's property. I was buying books. The house did not belong to my father. They are coming out of the garden. You did not visit the children, for (benn) they are visiting my mother. He is standing next to his brother. He is not coming, but we are going.

1. This man is a workingman. 2. He bought a little house in the village. 3. The houses in that village are all small, but they are comfortable, and are also warm in winter. 4. He lived in a house with a garden for two years, but the house was (war) not his property. 5. It belonged to the son of my teacher. 6. The road to this house goes through the forest. 7. My brother does not live here now. 8. He lived in that city many years, and then he visited (the) father every summer. 9. But now he does not come often.

VOCABULARY

all, pron. adj. all, every;

alles, everything

das Dorf, the village

das Eigentum, the property

gestern, adv. yesterday

jen., pron. adj. that, yon

kaufen, to buy

klein, adj. small, little

der Rand, the edge

sagen, to say, tell

das Tal, the valley

tot, adj. dead

der Wald, the forest, woods

wo, adv. where

damals, then, at that time

THE WEAK DECLENSION

75. The endings of the Weak Declension are (e)n throughout; masculines add these endings in all cases except the nominative singular, feminines in all cases of the plural.

76. To the Weak Declension belong most feminine monosyllables (255), and 20 masculines denoting animate objects (253); most feminine polysyllables (48, 54), and masculines in e (245, c) denoting animate objects; and many foreign masculines accented on the last syllable.

77. Nouns of the Weak Declension form their nominative plural by adding (e)n, and umlaut never.

78. Feminines in in double the n before an ending (60): die Gräfin, die Gräfinnen.

79. Herr adds n in the singular and en in the plural: der Herr, des Herrn, die Herren.

80. To the Weak Declension belong all feminine monosyllables that are not umlautable (255); also a number that are umlautable (54), of which Bahn, Form, Frau, Post, Schulb, Tat, Uhr, Zahl, are important.

81. Feminines also were formerly declined in the singular; hence the survival of such forms as auf Erden, on earth, and of poetic forms such as Röslein auf der Heiden, little rose on the heath.

82. Declension of der Neffe, the nephew; der Bär, the bear; die Nadel, the needle.

Sing. N.	der Neffe –	die Nadel –	der Bär –
G.	des Neffen	der Nadel –	des Bär en
D.	dem Neffen	der Nadel –	dem Bär en
A.	den Neffen	die Nadel –	den Bär en
Plur. N.	die Neffen	die Nadel n	die Bär en
G.	der Neffen	der Nadel n	der Bär en
D.	den Neffen	den Nadel n	den Bär en
A.	die Neffen	die Nadel n	die Bär en

83. The Normal Sentence Arrangement:

- a. Subject and its qualifiers.
- b. Personal verb.
- c. Pronoun objects (shorter, longer).
- d. Adverb of time.
- e. Noun objects (indirect, direct).
- f. Other adverbs (place, manner).
- g. Adverbial phrases (time, place, manner).
- h. Negative.
- i. Predicate.
- j. Separable prefix.
- k. Non-personal verb.

1. This is the usual arrangement, though there is great freedom of choice. The adjuncts of the verb (*c-i*) are generally arranged in the inverse order of their importance (58), which is a matter of different interpretation. But a word should generally be preceded by its qualifiers: *sonst niemand*, *no one else*; and so *nicht* regularly precedes the particular word modified: *Der Mensch ist nicht hier zu Hause*, *This is not man's home*.

84. In inverted (68) or transposed (158) order change only the position of the personal verb, except that a pronoun object, and rarely an adverb of time, may precede the noun subject: *Dann gab ihr der Mann ein drittes Stück*, *Then the man gave her a third piece*.

DRILL VIII

Decline —

der Advokat', Affe, Axt, Bär, Brunnen, Eßig, Falke, Gott, Ham-
mel, Hase, Herr, Höfling, Krieg, Lehrer, Leib, Matrose, Mensch,
Philosoph', Reichtum, Student', Zeuge.

die Achsel, Axt, Besorgniß, Birne, Dattel, Faust, Finsternis, Frau, Fürstin, Gestalt, Mutter, Not, Oper, Prinzessin, Rose, Schrift, Schuld, Tür, Uhr, Wirtin.

das Bein, Böcklein, Brett, Christentum, Ei, Duzend, Feld, Fürstentum, Fuder, Gebiet, Gefängnis, Gestade, Konzert, Kuvert, Lager, Lied, Märchen, Paar, Reich, Revier, Kind, Schicksal, Tor, Böglein, Wunder.

Conjugate the past indicative of —

arbeiten, besuchen, führen, glauben, holen, malen, loben, reden, sagen, setzen, machen, zeigen.

EXERCISE VIII

1. Die Arbeit ist gut für den Menschen.
2. Für jede Rose bekomme ich eine Mark; denn die Rosen sind jetzt sehr teuer.
3. Alle Blumen sind aber nicht so teuer.
4. Im Sommer bekomme ich auch nicht so viel für die Rosen.
5. Der Winter ist aber nicht die Zeit der Blumen.
6. Dieser Herr ist der Vater des Studenten.
7. Er besucht seinen Sohn auf der Universität.
8. Der Sohn wohnt in unserem Hause; denn er ist ein Freund meines Bruders.
9. Mein Bruder ist auch Student.
10. Unter den Studenten sind viele Amerikaner.

My master's house; a student's time; the time of flowers; time for work; time for everything. The man's wife always has work. Yesterday she sold flowers. The man does not work. He buys and she sells; we bought and he sold; did you sell? We fetched flowers for the woman.

1. Many of the students at the university are Americans.
2. They do not all go home in summer, for they do not have (the) time for that (dazu).
3. This summer two students were visiting my brother in the mountains.
4. We often go into the woods now, for there are many flowers there.
5. But I

bought some roses yesterday from a woman in town. 6. She has many children, and her husband is dead. 7. The mother does not always have work, and then she sells flowers. 8. She sold many flowers to our friends, and mother bought some roses. 9. Roses are very dear in the mountains, for the weather is too cold for flowers.

VOCABULARY

die Arbeit, the work	immer, <i>adv.</i> ever, always
bekommen, to get, receive	die Mark, <i>w.</i> the mark (=23.8 cents)
die Blume, the flower	der Mensch, the human being, man
dem, <i>coörd. conj.</i> for	die Rose, the rose
die Frau, the woman, wife	der Student, the student
gut, <i>adj.</i> good	teuer, <i>adj.</i> dear, expensive
der Herr, the master, gentleman, Mr.	die Universität, the university
ihr, <i>pron. adj.</i> her, their	verkaufen, to sell
	die Zeit, the time

THE MIXED DECLENSION

85. Mixed nouns are declined strong in the singular and weak in the plural. Few of them are of any importance, and they are added merely for the sake of completeness.

86. To the Mixed Declension belong —

- a. A few unclassifiable masculines and neuters : *der Bauer*, *der Nachbar*, *der Vetter*; *das Auge*, *das Bett*.
- b. Masculines in unaccented or (whose accent in the plural, however, shifts to the final stem syllable : *der Doktor*, *die Doktoren*) : *Doktor*.
- c. Foreign neuters whose plural ended in *a* or *ia*, which has become *en* or *ien* in German : *das Studium*, *die Studien*; *das Mineral*, *die Mineralien*.

87. The principal unclassifiable masculines (256) belonging to this declension are *Bauer*, *Dorn*, *Nachbar*, *Schmerz*, *See*, *Staat*, *Strahl*, *Untertan*, *Vetter*, *Vorfahr*.

88. The unclassifiable mixed neuters (257) are *Auge*, *Bett*, *Ende*, *Hemd*, *Interesse*, *Zumel*, *Ohr*, *Weh*.

89. Declension of *der Doktor*, *the doctor*; *das Bett*, *the bed*; *das Konzilium*, *the council*:

Sing. N.	<i>der Doktor</i> —	<i>das Bett</i> —	<i>das Konzilium</i> —
G.	<i>des Doktor</i> s	<i>des Bett</i> es	<i>des Konzilium</i> s
D.	<i>dem Doktor</i> —	<i>dem Bett</i> e	<i>dem Konzilium</i> —
A.	<i>den Doktor</i> —	<i>das Bett</i> —	<i>das Konzilium</i> —
Plur. N.	<i>die Doktor</i> en	<i>die Bett</i> en	<i>die Konzili</i> en
G.	<i>der Doktor</i> en	<i>der Bett</i> en	<i>der Konzili</i> en
D.	<i>den Doktor</i> en	<i>den Bett</i> en	<i>den Konzili</i> en
A.	<i>die Doktor</i> en	<i>die Bett</i> en	<i>die Konzili</i> en

DRILL IX

Decline —

der Anfang, Bauer, Brief, Bürger, Bube, Deckel, Demokrat', Doktor, Elefant', Erbe, Fremdling, Fürst, Galan, Handel, Herr, Junge, Kamerad', Knabe, Kummer, Leichnam, Löwe, Mond, Nachbar, Neffe, Ochs, Professor, Niemen, Riese, Sarg, See, Soldat', Staat, Theolog', Bagabund', Bitter, Wurm, Bahn, Bensor.

die Antwort, Bahn, Betrübnis, Dummheit, Form, Frage, Freundin, Gans, Gegend, Gräfin, Herrin, Hoffnung, Königin, Kraft, Lust, Mannschaft, Mauer, Maus, Nessel, Nuß, Pflicht, Riesin, Tat, Wand, Zahl.

das Auge, Bett, Bild, Brot, Eigentum, Ende, Evangelium, Fest, Fossil, Gefühl, Gemälde, Geschäft, Gleichenis, Hemd, Holz, Horn, Huhn, Juwel, Kehricht, Krokodil', Licht, Meer, Metall', Mineral, Muster, Ohr, Pflaster, Reisig, Scheusal, Stück, Studium, Tuch, Ungetüm, Zeugnis.

EXERCISE IX

1. Er ist ein Bauer und wohnt auf (in) dem Lande. 2. Jeden Tag geht der Bauer auf seinen Acker. 3. Der Mann ist der Bitter meines Vaters. 4. Er hatte viele Äcker nahe bei diesem Dörfchen, und auch ein Häuschen. 5. Aber jetzt hat er gar nichts; denn er verkaufte den Nachbarn all seine Äcker. 6. Jetzt wohnt er in dem Häuschen eines Betters und arbeitet für seine Nachbarn. 7. In seinem Häuschen ist nur ein Zimmer, und das Zimmer hat nur einen Stuhl und ein Bett. 8. Doktoren sind nicht alle Ärzte, aber jeder Arzt ist ein Doktor.

1. This is not the house of a doctor, but two doctors live in that house. 2. Our cousins live in the country. 3. Many of their neighbors are peasants. 4. Every peasant has a field and a cottage. 5. Perhaps he has a garden behind his cottage. 6. The stable is generally under the cottage. 7. The

peasant works in his field, and his wife works in the garden.
8. Often the wife works in the field too. 9. The life of a peasant is not always pleasant. 10. My mother was visiting her cousins in the country. 11. "For they have eyes, and see not; ears have they, and hear not."

VOCABULARY

der Acker, the cultivated field, acre	das Land, the land, country
der Arzt, the physician	der Nachbar, the neighbor
das Auge, the eye	nichts, <i>indecl. pr.</i> nothing
der Bauer, the peasant, farmer	das Ohr, the ear
das Bett, the bed	der Stall, the stable
der Doktor, the doctor	der Beter, the cousin
gar, <i>adv.</i> fully, very; <i>gar nichts</i> , nothing at all	vielleicht, <i>adv.</i> perhaps

STRONG DECLENSION				WEAK DECL.	MIXED DECL.
	1st Class	2d Class	3d Class		
MASCULINES			Geift, Gott, Reib, Mann, Ort, Rund, Raib, Burn	<i>2d denoting animate objects</i>	
		<i>Most</i>			Ge, Staat, Strahl, etc.
Polysyllables	=el, =en, =er, =em; =e denoting inanimate ob- jects; Räfe		Blöselwicht, Stratum, Reifatum, Normund	=e denoting animate objects; many foreign accented on ultima	=or unaccented; Bauer, Raßhar, Ritter, etc.
		<i>Most</i>			
FEMININES		<i>3d umlautable</i>		<i>Most</i>	
Monosyllables					
Polysyllables					
NEUTERS					
Monosyllables					
Polysyllables	=el, =en, =er; =em, =ein; Ge-; Herj		<i>Most</i>		

GENDER

91. The gender of nouns may generally be determined from their meaning or termination, but must often be learned by observation. The following rules will be found useful, though there are occasional exceptions.

a. Gender determined by Termination:

MASCULINES	FEMININES	NEUTERS
=e (human being)	=e (not human)	=d̄hen
=el (instrument)	=ei	=en (verbal)
=en (not verbal)	=erei	Ge= =e
=er (agent or station)	=heit	=lein
=id̄	=feit	=nis
=ig	=in	=sal
=ling	=ſchaft	=ſel
=m	=ung	=tum
=rich	verb stems + t	
verb stems	=age	
	=ie	
	=it	
	=ion	

b. Gender Determined by Meaning:

1. *Masculine are*—

The names of males, points of the compass, winds, seasons, months, and days: *der Hengst, the stallion; der Süd, the south; der Sommer, the summer; der Juni, June; der Dienstag, Tuesday.*

2. *Feminine are*—

Most abstracts, and the names of females, most rivers, trees, plants, flowers: *die Jugend, youth; die Stute, the mare; die Donau, the Danube; die Rose, the rose.*

3. Neuter are —

The letters of the alphabet, collectives, words arbitrarily used as nouns, and the names of domestic animals without reference to sex, cities, most countries (90), metals, materials: das A, a; das Gestirn, *the stars*; das Einmaleins, *the multiplication table*; das Pferd, *the horse*; (das) Straßburg, *Strassburg*; (das) Deutschland, *Germany* (but die Schweiz, *Switzerland*); das Gold, *gold*; das Holz, *wood*.

92. Compound nouns (41, f) derive their gender from the last element: das Pfarrhaus, *the parsonage*, die Seereise, *the ocean voyage*; but die Antwort (das Wort), *the answer*, der Mittwoch (die Woche), *Wednesday*.

DRILL Xa

Determine the gender of —

Arm, Aufschub (aufführen), Aufstand (aufführen), Aussicht (aussehen), Bächlein, Balken (beam), Bäuerin, Besen (broom), Bildnis, Biß (beißen), Blick, Blume, Brünnlein, Busen (bosom), Dasein (existence), Drang (dringen), Erde, Empörung, Fall, Festung, Fischerei, Freiheit, Fund (finden), Gefängnis, Gelübde, Gerechtigkeit, Gewitter, Gram, Kunst (gönnen), Hafen (haven), Helm, Henkel (handle), Henter (hangman), Herrschaft, Hieb (hauen), Hirte (herdsman), Käfig, Kamm, Kauf, Kindheit, Knochen (bone), Kranich, Lauf, Lehrling, Leichnam, Leiden (suffering), Mehrheit, Meinung, Meuterei, Nachen (boat), Obrigkeit, Odem, Ordnung, Pate (godfather), Pflicht (pflegen), Qualm, Rechen (rake), Reiterei, Riese (giant), Schläfer (sleeper), Schmetterling, Schnitt (schneiden), Schreiben (writing), Schuster (shoemaker), Sklave (slave), Sprung (springen), Stamm, Tiefe (deep), Tracht (tragen), Vergnügen (pleasure), Vernunft (vernehmen), Wachstum, Wahrheit, Wüterich, Zucht (ziehen), Zug (ziehen), Bügel (rein), Zukunft (kommen).

PROPER NAMES

93. Names of Persons: The names of persons form their genitive by adding *s*, unless the name ends in a sibilant, in which case the apostrophe is used: *Schiller's Gedichte*, *Schiller's poems*; *Voss' Werke*, *Voss's Works*. But the genitive has no ending if it be preceded, whether immediately or not, by a pronominal adjective (99 ff.): *des Karl*, *des Dichters Goethe*, *meines Johann*.

94. The other cases have no ending, but the article may be used for the sake of clearness: *Ich gebe Fritz das Buch*, *I give the book to Fritz*; but *Heute hat sie den Karl (84) gesehen*, *To-day she saw Karl*.

95. A title preceding a proper name is declined only when used with the article, in which case the proper name takes no ending (93): *Kaiser Wilhelms*, *des Kaisers Wilhelm*, *Emperor William's*.

96. Names of Places: The names of countries and towns are generally neuter (91, b), and are then used without the article, except when qualified. They form their genitive by adding *s*; but if they already end in a sibilant, the genitive is replaced by —

- a. *von* with the dative: *die Schulen von Paris*, *the schools of Paris*.
- b. A proper adjective (264): *die Pariser Schulen*, *the Parisian schools*.
- c. *Stadt* or *Dorf* in the genitive, the name of the place, following the usage of names of persons (93), being in apposition and without ending: *die Schulen der Stadt Paris*, *the schools of the city of Paris*.

97. Die *Schweiz*, *Switzerland*, die *Türkei*, *Turkey*, die *Pfalz*, *the Palatinate*, are feminine, and are declined with the article throughout: die *Schweiz*, der *Schweiz*, etc.

98. Other proper names generally follow the declension of common nouns, except that for the most part they lack a plural: der *Rhein*, des *Rheins*, etc.

DRILL Xb

Determine the gender of —

Abtei, Arbeiter (*workingman*), Baum, Besuch, Boden (*ground*),
 Bote (*messenger*), Christentum, Deckel (*lid*), Dörfchen, Dummheit,
 Ehre (*honor*), Erbschaft, Fittich, Fräulein, Frühling, Fürstin,
 Garten, Gärtner, Gebäude, Gesellschaft, Heiligtum, Hilfe (*help*),
 Hindernis, Höflichkeit, Knabe (*boy*), König, Lehrer, Leben (*life*),
 Mädchen, Maler (*painter*), Neuigkeit, Öffnung, Pfennig, Pförtner
 (*porter*), Rätsel, Reise, Reiter (*rider*), Schicksal, Schönheit,
 Teppich, Turm, Verwandtschaft, Wagen (*wagon*), Wandlung,
 Weisheit, Wurm, Zeichen (*sign*), Zeuge (*witness*), Böbling.

EXERCISE X

1. Dort kommt Wilhelm, ein Freund meines Bruders Karl.
2. Karl und Wilhelm sind Studenten auf der Universität Heidelberg.
3. Sie wohnen bei einem Freunde des Vaters, dem Professor Schmidt.
4. Die Stadt Heidelberg ist wegen ihrer Universität und ihres Schlosses sehr berühmt.
5. Das Schloß steht hoch oben an einem Berge.
6. Unten an dem Flusse Neckar liegt die Stadt.
7. Vor vielen Jahren war (was) auch der Dichter Scheffel Student in Heidelberg.
8. Und jetzt steht ein Standbild von ihm (him) oben bei dem Schloße.
9. Scheffels „Trompeter von Säckingen“ ist sehr schön und interessant.

1. I am now a student at the University [of] Göttingen.
2. I live at the house of my friend Karl.
3. His father is a professor at (an) the university, and he is also a student.
4. In summer we travel, and visit many countries of Europe.
5. Last

summer we traveled through Germany and visited many cities and villages. 6. We traveled also through the mountains of Switzerland. 7. This summer we are going to (nach) France. 8. Karl's mother and my sister Marie are already in Paris. 9. They say [that] the buildings of Paris are beautiful and interesting. 10. They visited Heine's house there, but it was not so interesting.

VOCABULARY

berühmt, <i>adj.</i> famed, famous	reisen, to travel
Deutschland, Germany	das Schloss, the castle
der Dichter, the poet	schon, <i>adv.</i> already
Europa, Europe	schön, <i>adj.</i> beautiful, fine
Frankreich, France	die Schweiz, Switzerland
hoch, <i>adj.</i> high	das Standbild, the statue
lebt, <i>adj.</i> last	unten, <i>adv.</i> below
liegen, to lie	wegen, <i>prep. gen.</i> on account
oben, <i>adv.</i> above, up	of, because of
der Professor, the professor	Wilhelm, William

WORD LIST II

Abend	gar	Schloß
Acker	gestern	schön
all	gut	Schweiz
an	Herr	sehen
angenehm	hoch	singen
Arbeit	hören	Sohn
Arzt	ihr	Student
auf	immer	Stuhl
Auge	ja	Tag
Bauer	Jahr	Tal
Baum	jen=	teuer
bekommen	kaufen	Tisch
Berg	klein	tot
berühmt	König	über
Bett	Land	um
Blume	lebt	unser
denn	liegen	unten
Deutschland	Mensch	unter
Doktor	Monat	verkaufen
Dorf	Nachbar	Better
Eigentum	nichts	vielleicht
es	oben	von
Europa	Ohr	Wald
Fluß	Professor	Weg
Frankreich	Reise	wegen
Frau	reisen	wo
Freund	sagen	Zeit

THE ADJECTIVE

99. Adjectives are either pronominal or descriptive.

100. Pronominal adjectives may be used either as adjectives or as pronouns. In *Dies ist mein Buch*, *This is my book*, and *Dieses Buch ist mein*, *This book is mine*, *dies* is a pronoun in the first sentence and an adjective in the second, while *mein* is first an adjective and then a pronoun.

101. Pronominal adjectives are declined in the singular like either *dies* (104) or *ein* (30); in the plural they all have the endings of *dies*.

102. Like *dies* are declined —

all (258), *all, every*
dies (148), *this, the latter*
einige, *some, several, a few*
jed- (258), *each, every*
jen- (148), *that, yon, the former*
manch (258), *many a, many*
solch (148), *such*
viel (258), *much, many*
welch (152), *which, what (kind of)*

103. Like *ein* are declined —

a. *Kein* (141), *no, not a, not any, negative of ein.*
 b. The possessives (140) —

mein, my
dein, your
sein, his, its
ihr, her, their
unser, our
euer, your
Schr, your

104. Declension of *dies*, *this*; *ihr*, *her*, *their*:

Singular			Plural
M.	F.	N.	M. F. N.
N. <i>dies er</i>	<i>dies e</i>	<i>dies es, dies</i>	<i>dies e</i>
G. <i>dies es</i>	<i>dies er</i>	<i>dies es</i>	<i>dies er</i>
D. <i>dies em</i>	<i>dies er</i>	<i>dies em</i>	<i>dies en</i>
A. <i>dies en</i>	<i>dies e</i>	<i>dies es, dies</i>	<i>dies e</i>
N. <i>ihr –</i>	<i>ihr e</i>	<i>ihr –</i>	<i>ihr e</i>
G. <i>ihr es</i>	<i>ihr er</i>	<i>ihr es</i>	<i>ihr er</i>
D. <i>ihr em</i>	<i>ihr er</i>	<i>ihr em</i>	<i>ihr en</i>
A. <i>ihr en</i>	<i>ihr e</i>	<i>ihr –</i>	<i>ihr e</i>

DRILL XI

Decline —

all, dein, einig-, euer, ihr, Ihr, jed-, jen-, kein, mein, manch,
sein, solch, unser, viel, welch.

Determine the gender of —

Artigkeit, Atem, Bäcker (*baker*), Bettelei, Böcklein, Christenheit,
Daumen (*thumb*), Dirnchen, Eigentum, Erbe (*heir*), Ereignis,
Fähnrich, Fang (*fangen*), Fischer (*fisher*), Gärtnerin, Gebirge,
Gefangenschaft, Hebel (*lever*), Honig, Irrsal, Jüngling, Kasten
(*box*), Königin, Lage (*position*), Löwe (*lion*), Märchen, Malerin,
Nahrung, Nartheit, Ofen (*stove*), Oheim, Pflegling, Pfropfen
(*cork*), Priestertum, Regierung, Rettich, Ruhm, Sage (*saying*),
Sausen (*bluster*), Stachel (*sting*), Tollheit, Verhältnis, Verkauf
(*verkaufen*), Vöglein, Wecker (*alarm*), Wesen (*being*), Wirtschaft,
Gauberei, Zeifig.

EXERCISE XI

1. Letzten Sommer machten wir eine Reise nach der Schweiz.
2. Auf der Reise begegneten wir allerlei Menschen.
3. Dieser Mann ist Arzt, und ist sehr berühmt.
4. Jedes Jahr bekomme ich

ein Buch vom Professor zu meinem Geburtstage. 5. Dieses Buch ist aber nicht mein Eigentum; es gehört der Mutter. 6. Die Vögel kommen durch das Fenster in mein Zimmer. 7. Jedes Mädchen bekommt morgen eine Rose; aber die Knaben bekommen keine. 8. Das Gebäude in jenem Walde ist kein Kloster. 9. Hoch oben im Baume höre ich einen Vogel singen, aber ich sehe keinen. 10. Vielleicht sehen wir den Onkel morgen, denn er ist auch hier in der Schweiz.

This is my father. That book is not mine. Where is your hat? I have no hat. Is your brother at home? Many a child has not such a book. This is not our house; we live in that house. Many a man; many men. Each boy and every girl. We go home every day. Several children and many women. Which house? *There are no beds here; there are only chairs.

1. The mountains of Switzerland are very high; only in this country are they so high. 2. There are no trees up on the mountains, for it is very cold there; but down in the valley are many. 3. This book is not his; I bought it yesterday. 4. In this forest are all kinds of trees and many flowers. 5. There are many birds in the mountains, but they do not sing. 6. Do you see that tree in our garden? 7. This is our house, and that [one] belongs to my uncle. 8. Where did you buy those roses? 9. We bought them from a woman in town. 10. Are they not beautiful? 11. We have many flowers, but none so beautiful as these.

VOCABULARY

<i>ander, pron. adj.</i> other	<i>der Knabe, the boy</i>
<i>begegnen, dat.</i> to meet	<i>die Reise, the journey</i>
<i>der Geburtstag, birthday</i>	<i>sie, pr.</i> they, them
<i>wie, conj.</i> as, than	

* The German is more apt to begin such sentences with the adverb and to omit the expletive.

THE DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVE

105. Descriptive adjectives express some qualification of their noun. They are used in five ways:

- a.* Attributively } declined.
- b.* Substantively } declined.
- c.* Predicatively } not declined.
- d.* Appositively } not declined.
- e.* Adverbially } not declined.

1. These uses are illustrated as follows:

- a.* *Der fleißige Knabe, the diligent boy.*
- b.* *Die Fleißigen (18, a) haben ihren Lohn, The diligent have their reward.*
- c.* *Der Knabe ist fleißig, The boy is diligent.*
- d.* *Der Knabe, fleißig in seiner Arbeit, hat seinen Lohn, The boy, diligent in his work, has his reward.*
- e.* *Der Knabe arbeitet fleißig, The boy works diligently.*

106. The function of the adjective is quite the same in all five uses, i.e. to express some qualification of the noun; the difference between *der fleißige Knabe*, *der Knabe ist fleißig*, and *der Knabe arbeitet fleißig* is merely one of degree, each expression asserting a certain degree of diligence on the part of the boy.

107. There are two adjective declensions, — the Strong and the Weak, — as there are two noun declensions. In the noun, however, the declension is determined by the gender, number of syllables, and termination (41, *e*), and is fixed; but the declension of an adjective is determined by the word preceding it (109), and varies accordingly.

1. Notice especially that the declension of the following noun has absolutely nothing to do with the declension of the adjective. Nor will the genitive of an adjective necessarily be strong merely because its nominative is strong, since each case is determined separately.

108. The Adjective Endings:

	Strong			Weak		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. N.	er	e	es	e	e	e
G.	es	er	es	en	en	en
D.	em	er	em	en	en	en
A.	en	e	es	en	e	e
	M. F. N.			M. F. N.		
Plur. N.		e			en	
G.		er			en	
D.		en			en	
A.		e			en	

109. An adjective has a strong ending when not preceded by a form of the pronominal adjective with a distinctive ending; otherwise it has a weak ending: *braver Mann*, *ein braver Mann*, *eines braven Mannes*, *der brave Mann*, *ihr braver Mann*, *good man*, etc.

110. But with the genitive of a strong masculine or neuter noun the weak form of the adjective is more usual in order to avoid the repetition of the ending *es*, though no form of the pronominal adjective precede: *heiteren Sinnes*, *of cheerful mind*; *roten Weines*, *of red wine*; *kalten Wassers*, *of cold water*.

111. A descriptive adjective will not affect the ending of a following descriptive adjective. Hence, if a noun has two or more descriptive adjectives, they will all have the same ending: *ein armer alter Mann*, *eines armen alten Mannes*, *arme alte Männer*, *a poor old man*, etc.

112. Unaccented *e* in the final stem syllable may be dropped before an ending and is always dropped if it is the last letter in the stem: *edler* (*edel*), *heitres* (*heiter*), *weiser* (*weise*); but either *edeln* or *edlen*.

113. *Hoch* loses the *c* of its stem when declined: *höher*, *höhe*, *höhes*, etc.

114. Declension of *braver Sohn*, *good son*; *ein altes Buch*, *an old book*; *diese schöne Blume*, *this beautiful flower*:

Sing. N.	brav er Sohn -	ein -	alt es Buch -
G.	brav en Sohn es	ein es	alt en Buch es
D.	brav em Sohn e	ein em	alt en Buch e
A.	brav en Sohn -	ein -	alt es Buch -
Plur. N.	brav e Söhne	alt e	Bücher
G.	brav er Söhne	alt er	Bücher
D.	brav en Söhnen	alt en	Bücher
A.	brav e Söhne	alt e	Bücher
Sing. N.	diese schöne Blume -		
G.	dies er schön en Blume -		
D.	dies er schön en Blume -		
A.	diese schöne Blume -		
Plur. N.	diese schön en Blume n		
G.	dies er schön en Blume n		
D.	dies en schön en Blume n		
A.	diese schön en Blume n		

DRILL XII

Decline —

ein warmer Abend	meine liebe fromme Frau
dieser schlechte Apfel	euer treuer Freund
mein schwacher Arm	der erste reiche Gast
mancher hohe Baum	manche wahre Geschichte
unser weiches Bett	fein graues Haar
ein schönes Bild	das stehende Heer
der feste Boden	ein junger Held
ihr kleiner Bruder	ein sehr böser Junge
jener tiefe Brunnen	der deutsche Kaiser
unser träger Diener	ihre fette Kuh
ein frischgelegtes Ei	armer kleiner Vogel

EXERCISE XII

1. Gestern machten wir alle eine lange Reise. 2. Das Wetter war sehr schön, nicht zu warm und auch nicht zu kalt. 3. Auf dem Wege begegneten wir einem kleinen Mädchen; sie hatte allerlei zu verkaufen. 4. Wir kauften Brot und einige Äpfel. 5. Die Äpfel waren aber schlecht. 6. Also sagte die Mutter: „Wir kommen bald nach Hause, und dann bekommt ihr gute Äpfel und gutes Brot.“ 7. Wir hatten Hunger, aber wir warteten doch; denn schlechte Äpfel sind so gut wie keine. 8. Zu Hause steht ein alter Apfelbaum, und unter diesem Baume liegen jetzt immer Äpfel.

Of a good man; to my poor old mother; this beautiful city; a warm summer; cold weather; good sons; through a large house; my good son; another man; many a good book; such large houses; with this small table; our little brother; a very large man; tall girls and small boys; a fine old town; the last man's work; her interesting book; your new neighbor is my old friend; nothing good; beautiful Switzerland.

1. We are all going to the country to-morrow. 2. There our old uncle lives; he has a very large old house, and in front of the house are many beautiful old trees. 3. The rooms in this house are all very large, and in our room is an old bed. 4. Mother lived there with uncle many years ago. 5. She was then a little girl; but everything is still the same (*daselbe*), and she showed us (*uns*) the beautiful fields and the woods where she played.

VOCABULARY

also, <i>adv.</i> so, thus, therefore	der Hunger, the hunger
alt, <i>adj.</i> old	lang, <i>adj.</i> long
der Apfel, the apple	noch, <i>adv.</i> still, yet (<i>temporal</i>)
hald, <i>adv.</i> soon	schlecht, <i>adj.</i> bad
das Brot, the bread	spielen, to play
doch, <i>adv.</i> yet, still, for all that	warten, to wait
das Feld, the field	weit, <i>adj.</i> far, distant
groß, <i>adj.</i> large, great, tall	zeigen, to show

COMPARISON

115. The comparative degree of adjectives is formed by adding *er*, unaccented *e* in the final syllable being dropped. The superlative degree is formed by adding (*e*)*st*: *weit* *distant*, *weiter*, *weitest*; *eitel* *vain*, *eitler*, *eitelst*.

116. A few primitive monosyllabic adjectives with the vowel *a*, *o*, or *u* (265) add the umlaut as an additional sign of comparison: *alt*, *old*, *älter*, *ältest*; *jung*, *young*, *jünger*, *jüngst*.

117. In the positive and comparative degrees the stem is used when the adjective is not declined (105), otherwise the stem plus the regular adjective endings; but in the superlative, when the adjective is not declined, a phrase with *am* (*an dem*) is used: *der gute Mann*, *the good man*; *ein besseres Stück*, *a better piece*; *dass ist besser*, *that is better*; but *er schreibt am besten*, *he writes best*.

118. Adverbs, being uninflected, regularly have this second superlative form only; adjectives have both forms: *gern*, *gladly*, *lieber*, *am liebsten*; *alt*, *old*, *älter*, *ältest*, *am ältesten*.

119. Paradigms:

<i>schön</i> , <i>beautiful</i>	<i>schöner</i>	<i>schönst</i> =	<i>am schönsten</i>
<i>sauer</i> , <i>sour</i>	<i>saurer</i>	<i>sauerst</i> =	<i>am sauersten</i>
<i>flug</i> , <i>clever</i>	<i>flüger</i>	<i>flügft</i> =	<i>am flügftesten</i>
<i>oft</i> , <i>often</i>	<i>öfter</i>		<i>am öftesten</i>

120. Irregular Comparisons:

a. Adjectives:

<i>gut</i> , <i>good</i>	<i>besser</i>	<i>best</i> =	<i>am besten</i>
<i>groß</i> , <i>large</i>	<i>größer</i>	<i>größt</i> =	<i>am größten</i>
<i>hoch</i> , <i>high</i>	<i>höher</i>	<i>höchst</i> =	<i>am höchsten</i>
<i>nah(e)</i> , <i>near</i>	<i>näher</i>	<i>nächst</i> =	<i>am nächstesten</i>
<i>viel</i> , <i>much</i>	<i>mehr</i>	<i>meist</i> =	<i>am meistesten</i>

b. Adverbs:

<i>hald, soon</i>	<i>ehrer</i>	<i>am ehesten</i>
<i>gern, gladly</i>	<i>lieber</i>	<i>am liebsten</i>
<i>sehr, much, very</i>	<i>mehr</i>	<i>am meisten</i>
<i>wohl, well</i>	<i>besser</i>	<i>am besten</i>

DRILL XIII

Compare the adjectives —

*arm, bitter, breit, dunkel, eitel, faul, gesund, groß, gut, hoch,
kalt, kurz, lang, müde, nah, saftig, stark, taub, tief, viel, warm.*

Compare as adverbs —

*hald, fest, genau, gut, langsam, roh, schnell, schön, sehr, wacker,
wohl, zaubernd.*

Decline —

<i>das kürzeste Bein</i>	<i>das beste Jahr</i>
<i>unser bestes Bett</i>	<i>meine teuerste Schwester</i>
<i>dein letzter Brief</i>	<i>ihr ältester Sohn</i>
<i>diese kleinere Frau</i>	<i>ein wärmerer Tag</i>
<i>der erste reiche Gast</i>	<i>jenes tiefere Wasser</i>

EXERCISE XIII

1. Wir wohnen in einem kleinen Dorfe an einem kleinen Flusse.
2. Unser Dorf hat nur ein paar Straßen, und wir wohnen in einer der kleineren. 3. In der längsten Straße sind auch die größten Gebäude, aber sie sind meistens Geschäftsgebäude. 4. Wir wohnten früher in einem größeren Hause, aber dieses Hause ist schöner und besser, obgleich kleiner. 5. Auch haben wir jetzt eine kleinere Familie, denn mein älterer Bruder ist nicht mehr zu Hause, und die jüngere Schwester wohnt dieses Jahr beim Onkel, dem ältesten Bruder der Mutter. 6. Mein Zimmer ist das kleinste im Hause, aber es ist auch im Winter das wärmste.

He is older than I. The youngest children are not always the best. I see him oftenest. A very warm day is not more pleasant than the colder [ones]. My best book. This is probably best. These birds sing well. My younger brother sings better than my older [one], but my sister sings best. This is not the shortest day of the year; it is shorter than yesterday, but not so short as to-morrow.

1. There are several villages on this river.
2. We live in the largest one; for it is the most beautiful and has the best streets.
3. The smaller villages have really only one street.
4. There are several smaller streets, but they have only a few houses.
5. Our village is nearer (to the) town also.
6. We go there often, but I prefer to live (live more gladly) in our little village; for in winter it is much colder in (the) town, and in summer it is warmer.

VOCABULARY

eigentlich, <i>adj.</i> proper, real	jung, <i>adj.</i> young
die Famili'e, the family	obgleich, <i>conj.</i> although
frâh, <i>adj.</i> early; <i>comp.</i> former	das Paar, the pair; ein paar,
das Geschâftsgesâube, the business	a few
building	die Straâe, the street
wohl, <i>adv.</i> probably	

THE NUMERAL

121. Numerals are of two kinds: cardinals, which denote quantity, and ordinals, which denote the position or order of a thing in a group or series.

122. The fundamental cardinals, with their derivatives, are —

0	null	11	elf	20	zwanzig
1	ein(s),	12	zwölf	30	dreißig
2	zwei	13	dreizehn	40	vierzig
3	drei	14	vierzehn	50	fünfzig
4	vier	15	fünfzehn	60	sechzig
5	fünf	16	sechzehn	70	siebzig
6	sechs	17	siebzehn	80	achtzig
7	sieben	18	achtzehn	90	neunzig
8	acht	19	neunzehn		
9	neun				
10	zehn				
100	hundert				
1000	tausend				
1,000,000	eine Million				

123. The teens (13-19) are formed by suffixing *zehn* to the corresponding units, *sechzehn* dropping the *s* and *siebzehn* generally dropping the *en*; *elf* and *zwölf* are anomalous.

i. For the pronunciation of *siebzehn* and *siebzig* see 3.

124. The tens (20-90) are formed by suffixing similarly *zig*, with the following irregularities: *zwanzig*, *dreißig*, *sechzig*, *siebzig*.

125. Intermediate numerals are formed as follows: *einundzwanzig*, *achtundsechzig*, *hundert siebenunddreißig*, *tausend vierhundert neunundsechzig*. Notice that in writing out numerals it is customary to group the units and tens, the hundreds, the thousands, etc.

126. *Ein* serves also as indefinite article (30), and is the only cardinal that is now regularly declined.

i. The form *eins* (contraction of *eine s*) is used when absolute and not followed by another numeral, as in counting: *eins*, *zwei*, etc.

2. Unemphatic *one*, or *a*, is not expressed before *hundert* or *tausend* at the beginning of a number: *hundert und zehn*, but *tausend einhundert dreiunddreißig*.

127. Ordinals: The ordinals are formed from the cardinals by suffixing *t* from 1 to 19, and *st* from 20 on; but *erst*, *dritt*, and *acht* are irregular: *sechst*, *neunt*, *einundachtzigst*, *hundertst*, *hundertundzweit*. They are regularly declined (105).

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

128. Time of Day:

a. The even hour is expressed by *Uhr* (181): *sechs Uhr*, *six o'clock*.

b. The half-hour is expressed by *halb* without a preposition, with the next full hour as starting-point: *halb acht*, *half of eight*, i.e. *half-past seven*.

c. The quarters are expressed by *Viertel* (8) with the preposition:

1. *nach (after)* or *vor (before)*: (*ein*) *Viertel nach eins*, *a quarter after one*; *Viertel vor zwei*, *a quarter to two*.

2. *auf (towards)*: *Viertel auf neun*, *a quarter past eight*; *drei Viertel auf neun*, *a quarter to nine*.

d. The minutes are expressed by *Minute* with the preposition *nach* or *vor*: *vierzehn Minuten nach zwölf*, *fourteen minutes after twelve*.

129. Dates: Dates, denoting definite time, are expressed by the accusative case (244, g, 3), the ordinal numeral being used: *Montag, den zwölften [Tag] Mai neunzehnhundertundzwei*; *Mittwoch, den ersten Oktober achtzehnhundert neunundneunzig*.

1. This is generally abbreviated to *Montag, d. 12. Mai 1902* (17).

130. The names of the months are—

der Januar	der Mai	der September
der Februar	der Juni	der Oktober
der März	der Juli	der November
der April	der August	der Dezember

131. The days of the week are—

der Sonntag	der Mittwoch	der Samstag
der Montag	der Donnerstag	or
der Dienstag	der Freitag	der Sonnabend

132. The names of the months and the days are all masculine (91, *b*), and are generally used with the definite article (239, *f*): *der Februar ist der kürzeste Monat*, *February is the shortest month*.

DRILL XIV

Decline—

eine gute Antwort	der blaue Himmel
das linke Auge	Ihr lieber Kamerad
ein eitles Ding	seine wilde Löwin
dein hübscher Garten	ein ganz anderer Mensch
unser leerer Raum	die höchste Zeit

EXERCISE XIV

1. Es sind vierzig Schüler in meiner Klasse in der Schule. 2. Ich bin der erste nicht, aber auch nicht der letzte. 3. Einen Monat war ich der zweite, und einen Monat der dritte, aber meistens bin ich der fünfte oder sechste. 4. Unsere Schule hat einen Kursus von neun Jahren, und ich bin in der zweiten Klasse. 5. Vor acht Jahren waren nur siebzehn Schüler in meiner Klasse, und von diesen siebzehn sind jetzt nur noch drei hier. 6. Von den anderen sind zwei tot, und einige sind (*have gone*) mit ihren Eltern nach Amerika. 7. Nächstes Jahr kommen wir auch aus der Schule, und dann gehe ich auch nach Amerika. 8. Ich habe schon einen Bruder dort; er wohnt in New York, der größten Stadt in den Vereinigten Staaten.

8, 14, 67, 3, 65, 11, 27, 92, 539, 5, 1283, 41, 3233, 74, 53, 888, 249; 651st, 99th, 179th, 1004th, 72d, 103d, 555th, 1001st; July 4, 1776; December 20, 1872; April 30, 1789; January 3, 1801; July 17, 1836; November 29, 1901; May 30, 1865; March 21, 1831; September 11, 1900; Friday, October 4, 1492; February 22, 1732; Saturday, February 23; Wednesday, June 5; August 31, 1539; May 17, 1679; June 16, 1443.

1. Germany is not the largest state in Europe, but it has almost as many inhabitants as the largest; for there are in *all Germany over sixty million people. 2. The largest city is Berlin; it has about two million inhabitants. 3. The second city is Hamburg and the third is Munich (München). 4. There are in Germany twenty-three states. 5. Almost every state has its university, and several have two. 6. The largest university is in Berlin and has more than seven thousand students. 7. Several of the universities are very old; Heidelberg was five hundred years old [in] 1886. 8. Heidelberg is not so large as many others, but is one of the most famous.

VOCABULARY

der Einwohner, the inhabitant
 die Eltern, *pl.* the parents
 fast, *adv.* almost
 ganz, *adj.* whole, all
 die Klasse, the class
 der Kursus, the course

ober, *coörd. conj.* or
 die Schule, the school
 der Schüler, the scholar
 der Staat, *mx.* the state
 ungefähr, *adv.* about
 die Vereinigten Staaten, the
 United States

* See 263.

THE PRONOUN

133. Pronouns are personal, reflexive, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative, or indefinite.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

134. The personal pronouns are —

	1	2		3	
	M. F. N.	M. F. N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. N.	ich	du	er	sie	es
G.	meiner	deiner	seiner	ihrer	seiner
D.	mir	dir	ihm	ihr	ihm
A.	mid	dich	ihn	sie	es
}					
Plur. N.	wir	ihr		sie	
G.	unser	euer		ihrer	
D.	uns	euch		ihnen	
A.	uns	euch		sie	

135. The agreement of the personal pronoun presents no difficulties, since the pronoun agrees in gender with its antecedent, regardless of sex. Hence *er* agrees with *der Mann, the man*, *der Baum, the tree*; *sie* with *die Frau, the woman*, *die Blume, the flower*; *es* with *das Wetter, the weather*, *das Mädchen, the girl*. Just so in English; for though *ship, engine*, etc., are not animate objects, and therefore are of neither sex, we often refer to them as *she*, to the sun as *he*, and to the moon as *she*.

136. But if the name of an animate object be neuter, the pronoun may agree with its sex rather than with its grammatical gender. So either *es* or *sie* may refer to *das Mädchen, the girl*, or *das Fräulein, the young lady*.

137. Substitution: Pronouns which do not denote animate objects are not as a rule used in the dative or accusative after a preposition. More commonly is used —

a. For the personal pronoun —

1. The demonstrative *derselbe* : *für dasselbe* (not *für es*), *for it*.
2. *Da* (dat before a vowel), which is prefixed to the preposition : *dafür*, *therefor, for it, for them*.

b. For the demonstrative, da as above.

c. For the interrogative or relative, wo (wör before a vowel) : morin, wherein, in what, in which.

138. Pronouns of Address: The pronouns of direct address are *du*, *ihr*, and *Sie* (16, *b, c*). *Du* is the familiar form, used in poetry or prayer, and in addressing a member of the family, an intimate friend, a child, sometimes a trusted servant, or an animal ; *ihr* is the plural of *du* ; *Sie* (sie, third person plural capitalized) is the conventional form, and is used under all other circumstances. In translating *you*, *Sie* should always be used unless the context clearly justifies the use of the familiar form.

THE REFLEXIVE

139. The reflexive pronoun, which is regularly used only in an objective relation, shows that the subject and the object are one and the same : *er schlägt sich*, *he strikes himself* ; *ich habe mir weh getan*, *I have hurt myself*. Hence it will have only such cases as may follow a verb of action or a preposition, i.e. any case except the nominative. It will be seen from the following paradigm that the corresponding form of the personal pronoun is used except in the dative and accusative of the third person, where *sich* is used. The declension is as follows :

	1	2		3	
	M. F. N.	M. F. N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. G.	meiner	deiner	seiner	ihrer	seiner
	mir	dir	sich	sich	sich
	mir	dich	sich	sich	sich
Plur. G.	unser	euer		ihrer	
	uns	euch		sich	
	uns	euch		sich	

1. The construction and position in the sentence of the reflexive pronoun differs in no respect from that of other pronouns, as may be seen from the following paradigm:

ich setze mich nicht hier, *I shall not sit (seat myself) here*
 du setzt dich nicht hier, etc.
 er setzt sich nicht hier,
 wir setzen uns nicht hier,
 ihr setzt euch nicht hier,
 sie setzen sich nicht hier,

DRILL XV

Decline —

ein braver Bauer	die ganze Nacht
ihr kleinstes Kind	euer letztes lärmes Pferd
jener brave Knabe	ihre arglose Schwester
unser eigenes Land	ein heißer Sommer
meine liebe alte Mutter	das äußere Tor

EXERCISE XV

1. Dieses Haus ist für uns nicht groß genug. 2. Denn wir sind unser sechs, und jeder wünscht ein Zimmer für sich. 3. Die Kinder gehen noch alle in die Schule. 4. Also müssen wir auch ein Studierzimmer für sie haben. 5. Der Vater kommt am Abend nach Hause

und studiert dann mit ihnen. 6. Die Großmutter besucht uns auch oft, und wir müssen ein Zimmer für sie haben. 7. Das macht also im ganzen zwölf Zimmer; aber Sie haben in diesem Hause nur zehn. 8. Vielleicht haben Sie ein größeres Haus.

Translate in all possible ways: To me; of you; with them; through it; for her; with him; in them; to her; after us; he and I; to himself; of myself; with yourselves; I have it (*der Stuhl*); of us; they; him; I see it (*das Haus*); here it (*die Blume*) is; he is coming with it (*das Buch*); she; them; with you; out of them (*die Fenster*); to it; by me; from herself; through you; after themselves; without us; from me; over it; between them; to himself.

1. My sister and I are visiting an old friend of (*von*) mine (me) to-day. 2. She lives in town, and we visit her every year. 3. Then we often go with her to the country. 4. She has a brother there, and she lives with him a few months each year. 5. He is building himself a fine house; perhaps we [*shall*] see it. 6. He has many workmen at the house now; they are working almost day and night in order to (*zu*) have it finished before the end of the month. 7. We like to visit him, for he is a very interesting man, and goes with us everywhere, and shows us everything.

VOCABULARY

bauen , to build	müssen , to be compelled, must
das Ende , the end	die Nacht , the night
fertig , <i>adj.</i> finished, ready	studieren , to study
genug , <i>adv.</i> enough	das Studier'zimmer , the study (room)
die Großmutter , the grandmother	überall(hin) , <i>adv.</i> everywhere
heute , <i>adv.</i> to-day	wünschen , to wish

THE POSSESSIVE

140. The possessives are derived from the genitive case of the personal pronoun and are —

mein, my	ihr, her	euer, your
dein, thine, your	sein, its	ihr, their
sein, his	unser, our	Schr, your

1. Care should be taken to make the stem of the possessive correspond to its antecedent; viz. dein refers always to du, euer to ihr, Schr to Sie, etc.

141. They are pronominal adjectives (100), and as adjectives are declined like ein (30). When used as pronouns they, like ein and kein, have the regular endings of dies, differing in form from the possessive adjective only where the adjective lacks endings. They are declined as follows :

Adjective			Pronoun		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.
Sing. N.	mein –	mein e	mein –	mein er	mein e
G.	mein es	mein er	mein es	mein es	mein er
D.	mein em	mein er	mein em	mein em	mein er
A.	mein en	mein e	mein –	mein en	mein e
Plur. N.		mein e			mein e
G.		mein er			mein er
D.		mein en			mein en
A.		mein e			mein e

1. But in the predicate the pronoun usually has no endings : Das Buch ist mein, *The book is mine.*

2. Unser and euer may drop the e of the stem before an ending (112): unsre or unsere, eurem or euerem.

142. In place of this form of the possessive pronoun may be used the weak form with the definite article (261), — *der meine, die meine, das meine*, etc., — or the derivative in *ig*: *der meinige, die meinige, das meinige*, etc. So also *der eine* (261), *the one*.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE

143. The demonstratives are *der, this, that*; *dies, this, that*; *jen=, that*; *solch, such*; *derselbe, the same*; *derjenige, that, the one* (before relatives); and *selbst* or *selber, self*. They are all pronominal adjectives.

1. For the substitution of an adverb for the demonstrative pronoun after a preposition, when it denotes an inanimate object, see 137, b.

144. *Der* as an adjective is the same in form as the definite article (28), but receives more emphasis. When a pronoun it is declined as follows:

	M.	F.	N.		M. F. N.
Sing. N.	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	Plur. N.	<i>die</i>
G.	<i>desseñ</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>desseñ</i>	G.	<i>deren, derer</i>
D.	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	D.	<i>denen</i>
A.	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	A.	<i>die</i>

145. *Dies*, *jen=*, and *solch*, both as adjectives and as pronouns, have the regular endings of the strong declension of the adjective (108), but in place of the neuter nominative and accusative *dieses*, the form *dies* is often used.

146. *Derjenige* and *derselbe* are compounds, both parts of which are regularly declined, — *der* like the definite article (28), and *jenig=* and *selb=* like a weak adjective (108):

Sing. N.	<i>derjenig e</i>	<i>diejenig e</i>	<i>dasjenig e</i>
G.	<i>desjenig en</i>	<i>derjenig en</i>	<i>dasjenig en, etc.</i>

147. *Selbst* and *selber* are indeclinable, and are used appositively as intensives or iteratives : *ich selber, I myself; der Mann selbst, the man himself.*

148. Use of the Demonstratives :

der denotes mere emphasis : *zu der Zeit, at that time; Ich habe nichts als mein Leben, das muß ich dem Könige geben, I have nothing but my life, and that I must give to the king.*

dies denotes nearness, or the object just referred to, often meaning *the latter; bis auf diesen Tag, up to the present day.*

jen- denotes remoteness, but is not much used ; it often means *the former; von jenen Zeiten, from remote times.*

solch, like *manch* (258) and *welch* (152), is not declined when it precedes *ein* ; when preceding an adjective, or a neuter noun without the indefinite article, it may also drop its ending : *Solch einer kommt nicht alle Tage, Such a one does not come every day; Solch schönes Wetter, Such beautiful weather.*

149. When *der* or *dies* refers to a noun not yet expressed, the neuter *das* or *dies* is used, the verb agreeing in number with the noun : *Das ist eine alte Geschichte, That is an old story; Dies sind meine Kinder, These are my children.*

DRILL XVI

Translate —

We live in this house. His book is better than mine ; in it are more pictures. Her brother is older than ours. No house is better than this, but a poor house is better than none. We do not want a large house, but one with eight rooms. My mother is older than hers, but younger than his. We want

one of these houses ; none of the others is large enough. My house is larger than yours, but there are not so many rooms in it. We have your books and hers. He is their friend and mine. This room is mine ; the next is yours. His father and ours are brothers. This is my apple and that is yours. On that table lies your book, and under it is hers. With this ; through that ; in it ; of that ; out of this ; under them ; over this ; to her ; after him ; from it ; it is in this ; in them ; in him ; from those ; for this.

EXERCISE XVI

1. Wir sind alle Kameraden, und sind in derselben Klasse in der Schule. 2. Es sind unter uns vier Brüder und zwei Schwestern. 3. Ich bin einer von den jüngsten, und mein Bruder ist der älteste ; denn er ist zehn Tage älter als deiner. 4. In dieser Woche haben wir drei Geburtstage. 5. Heute ist deiner, morgen meiner, und am Freitag ist Karls. 6. Hier ist ein neues Buch zu deinem Geburtstage von deinen Kameraden. 7. Wir müssen es noch heute lesen ; denn darin steht viel Interessantes. 8. Dieses Buch bekomme ich morgen, und jenes ist für Karl.

1. My father and yours are here ; with them is a tall man. 2. Is it your uncle ? You say he is coming to-day. 3. Yes, it is my uncle ; we are expecting him. 4. Perhaps his son is coming with him, for he is not going to school now. 5. Is that the son, that boy with a bundle under his arm ? 6. Yes, I believe it is he (he is it) ; he is almost as tall as my brother, though smaller than yours. 7. But your brother is three years older than mine, and almost four years older than this boy.

VOCABULARY

der Arm (57), the arm
das Bündel, the bundle
erwarten, to await, expect
glauben, to believe

der Kamerad', the comrade
lesen, to read
neu, adj. new
die Woche, the week

THE INTERROGATIVE

150. The interrogatives are *wer*, *who*; *was*, *what*; *welch*, *which*, *what*; *was* *für* (*ein*), *what kind of (a)*, *what*.

151. *Wer* and *was*, like the English *who* and *what*, have no distinct feminine or plural form; they are declined as follows :

	M. F.	N.
N.	<i>wer</i>	<i>was</i>
G.	<i>wessen</i>	<i>wessen</i>
D.	<i>wem</i>	—
A.	<i>wen</i>	<i>was</i>

152. *Welch* is a pronominal adjective (100), and is declined like a strong adjective (108); but it drops its ending before *ein*, and may do so before an adjective (148): *Welch eine Entschagung! What resignation!*

153. *Was* *für* is indeclinable, and *für* is here without prepositional force; but the *ein* agrees with its noun: *Was* *für* *eine Sprache* *redet* *er?* *What (kind of a) language does he speak?*

THE RELATIVE

154. The relatives are *der*, *welch*, *wer*, *was*, *who*, *which*, *that*.

155. *Der* and *welch* are used interchangeably, the choice being often determined by euphony. But *der* only may be used in the genitive or when the antecedent is a personal pronoun. They may never be omitted as is done so often in English: *der Mann, den Sie sehen, the man (whom) you see.* The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but, unlike the English relative, is always of the third person: *du, der immer fleißig ist, you who are*

always diligent. However, the verb may be made to agree with the person of the antecedent by repeating the personal pronoun of the first or second person: *du, der du immer fleißig bist.* But when a plural pronoun is used to designate a single person, as in the case of the conventional form *Sie*, the verb is singular in number: *Sie, der immer fleißig ist.* *Der* and *welch* are declined as follows:

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Sing. N.	der	die	das	welch er	welch e	welch es
G.	dessen	deren	dessen	[dessen	deren	dessen]
D.	dem	der	dem	welch em	welch er	welch em
A.	den	die	das	welch en	welch e	welch es
Plur. N.		die			welch e	
G.		deren			[deren]	
D.		denen			welch en	
A.		die			welch e	

156. *Wer* and *was* are declined like the interrogatives. They are compound relatives, containing their own antecedent, and are never used when the antecedent is expressed, unless it be a masculine pronoun following the relative clause, a neuter pronoun or adjective, or a whole clause: *Wer viel aussät, wird viel ernten*, *Whosoever sows much shall reap much*; *Er denkt an alles, was kommen kann*, *He thinks of everything that can happen*; *Wem Gott ein Amt gibt, dem gibt er auch Verstand*, *Whomsoever God gives responsibility, to him he gives also understanding*; *Er hat seine Sache gut gemacht, was mich sehr freut*, *He has done his task well, which pleases me much*.

157. For the substitution of the adverb *wo* for the relative or interrogative pronoun, when it denotes an inanimate object, see 187, c.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

158. A dependent clause is a clause that serves as one of the elements of a sentence, i.e. as subject, qualifier, or adjunct of the verb. Dependent clauses are therefore adjective, adverbial, or substantive clauses, according as they perform the function of an adjective, an adverb, or a noun. A dependent clause may be introduced by a subordinating conjunction, a relative, or an interrogative, and regularly has transposed order, the verb coming at the end of the clause (226): *Ich will es dir geben, obgleich du es nicht verdienst, I will give it to you, although you do not deserve it;* *Sagen Sie mir, wer das ist, Tell me who that is;* but a conditional clause may omit the subordinating conjunction *wenn*, and then have inverted order, just as in English: *wenn ich Sie wäre, if I were you;* *wäre ich Sie, were I you;* so also a clause of indirect discourse may omit the conjunction *dass*, and then have normal order: *Er sagt, dass er nicht wieder komme, or Er sagt, er komme nicht wieder, He says (that) he will not come again.*

159. As explained (64), the position of the verb is determined largely by the kind of clause. The following will complete the table given in 68, and will explain the order of dependent clauses :

Dependent Clause: Trans- posed, except —	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (a) \text{ Indirect Discourse, } \text{dass} \\ \text{omitted (Normal).} \\ (b) \text{ Condition, } \text{wenn} \text{ omitted} \\ \text{(Inverted).} \end{array} \right.$

160. In complex sentences finish one clause before beginning another, except that a relative clause should generally follow directly

after its antecedent: *Sie führten immer fort, dasselbe zu tun, They continued to do the same thing; Er hat alles, was er hatte, verloren, He has lost all that he had.*

1. It will be observed from the first example that an infinitive with *zu*, when qualified, is treated as a separate clause.

161. The most frequent subordinating conjunctions are—

<i>als, as, when</i> (definite)	<i>ob, whether, if</i>
<i>bis, until</i>	<i>obgleich, obwohl, though</i>
<i>da, as, since</i> (causal)	<i>seit(dem), since</i> (temporal)
<i>damit, in order that</i>	<i>während, while</i> (simultaneous action)
<i>dass, that, so that, in order that</i>	<i>wann, when</i> (interrogative)
<i>ehe, before</i>	<i>weil, because</i>
<i>indem, while</i> (action of shorter duration)	<i>wenn, if, whenever, when</i> (in-definite)
<i>nachdem, after</i>	
	<i>wenn auch, even if, although</i>

DRILL XVII

Translate—

This is the street in which we live; in it are many houses. With what do you make this? What is yours is mine, and what is mine is my own. Whoever has that book has what is not his. For what? with which; in what is it? in this; through what? after which; whereupon; of which; to whom; of what; to them; with him; with her; with it; with whom; with what; what is it? where is my letter? Who has it? Why did he not wait? Nobody is here. In which house? From what man? Who is this boy? He is my brother. Here is the man whose son visits you. The city the streets of which are longest. The child whose father is dead lives now with us. The woman whose son is my friend. Whose hat is this? It belongs to the boy whose mother is coming this morning.

EXERCISE XVII

1. Warum kommen Sie heute so früh? 2. Weil ich meinen alten Freund Karl, der auf dem Wege nach Hause ist, bald erwarte. 3. Wer ist denn eigentlich dieser alte Freund, von dem Sie so oft reden? 4. Er ist ein alter Schulkamerad, der früher hier wohnte. 5. Wir waren Studenten auf der Universität zur selben Zeit, und dann ist er nach Amerika. 6. Wir hörten lange nichts von ihm, und wußten (*knew*) nicht, wo er war, oder was aus ihm geworden war (*had become*). 7. So war es immer, heute hier, morgen dort, niemand wußte wo. 8. Dann kommt letzte Woche ein Brief von ihm, und heute kommt er selber. 9. Welch eine Freude er uns allen macht!

1. Who is that man, and why is he standing there? 2. He is a man that does everything for his friends and expects nothing from them. 3. He is now waiting for (*auf with acc.*) that old man whom you see there. 4. I believe that the old man, and many other poor people, receive much from him. 5. What a good man! 6. Yes, he is good. 7. Whoever knows him loves him; for what he has he gives (*gibt*) to others.

VOCABULARY

arm, *adj.* poor

der Brief, the letter

die Freude, the joy, pleasure

kennen, to know, be acquainted with

lang(e), *adv.* long, for a long time

die Leute, *pl.* the people, persons

lieben, to love

niemand, *indef.* *indecl. pr.*

nobody

reden, to speak

tun, to do

warum, *adv.* why

THE VERB

162. Voice: There are two voices,—the active, representing the subject as acting; and the passive, representing the subject as being acted upon.

163. Modes: The modes are indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and conditional. They are used as are the modes in English, except that the subjunctive, which fundamentally expresses doubt or uncertainty, is more frequent.

164. Conjugations: There are two conjugations of the verb, the Strong and the Weak, differing mainly in the sign of past time or the formation of the past tense. The sign of past time in the weak verb is (e)t, like the English (e)d or t: *tanzen, tanzte, dance, danced; baden, badete, bathe, bathed; schicken, schickte, send, sent.* In the strong verb, just as in English, the sign of past time is an ablaut or vowel-change: *kommen, kam, come, came.*

165. Principal Parts: The principal parts are the present infinitive, the first person singular of the past indicative, and the perfect participle; they are so called because from them are formed all other parts of the verb.

166. Infinitive: The present infinitive (272) always ends in (e)n; consequently, just as in English, there is no difference in this form between strong and weak verbs, except that polysyllabic stems are always weak: *reisen (w.), preisen (s.), wandeln (w.).*

167. The sign of the infinitive is *zu* (*to*), which always precedes it, except when the infinitive is complementary to —

a. A modal auxiliary or *werben.*

b. *Finden, fühlen, heißen, helfen, hören, lassen, lehren, lernen, machen, nennen, sehen* (285).

168. Participles: The present participle (269) always ends in (e)nd. The perfect participle (270) generally has the prefix *ge*; with weak verbs it ends in (e)t, with strong verbs it ends in en and sometimes has an ablaut: *wundernd, haltend, bleibend, gewundert, gehalten, geblieben*.

169. But the prefix *ge* is omitted in—

- a. Verbs with an inseparable prefix (199): *behalten, entlaufen*.
- b. Verbs in -ieren or -eien (15, a): *studiert, malebeit*.
- c. Werben, when used as auxiliary of the passive voice (235, a): *Wir sind gesehen worden, We have been seen.*

170. Tenses: Tenses are divided into two groups, — the simple tenses (present and past), which are formed without an auxiliary, and the compound tenses (all others), which are formed by means of an auxiliary verb: *ich sehe, I see; ich habe gesehen, I have seen; ich werde gesehen haben, I shall have seen.*

171. Personal Endings: Except in the past indicative the personal endings of the strong and weak verbs are everywhere alike.

THE PRESENT TENSE

172. Personal Endings:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
Sing.			
1.	e	e	
2.	(e)t	eft	e
3.	(e)t	e	
Plur.			
1.	en	en	
2.	(e)t	et	(e)t
3.	en	en	en

1. The (e) is euphonic, i.e. is dropped wherever it is not needed for easy utterance : *du passest*, *du lobst*, *er hatet*, *ihr faltet*, *ihr liebt*.

2. Verbs in *eln* or *ern* generally drop the e of the last syllable in the first person singular, and the e of the ending in the first and third persons plural : *ich wandle* (*wandeln*), *wir wundern*.

3. Historically there should be no ending in the second person singular imperative of any strong verbs, the e having been added, when there was no vowel-change, by analogy with weak verbs; but a reaction has set in against this e. Now verbs with a vowel-change never add e, certain other commonly used verbs like *kommen* and *lassen* rarely add it, and almost any strong verb may omit it (see List of Strong Verbs, 266).

173. These endings are added directly to the stem to form the present tense of most verbs, whether strong or weak; but strong verbs have the following peculiarity :

Vowel-Change in the Present Tense of Strong Verbs :

Indicative, second and third singular :

a becomes *ä* } and euphonic e is generally omitted, the final consonant
é " *ie* } of the stem being elided before the same consonant
é " *i* } of the ending.

Imperative, second singular :

é becomes *ie* } and the ending is dropped.
é " *i* }

I. The tendency to contract is characteristic of strong verbs. In the second person singular, euphonic e is often omitted, though there be no vowel-change, and similar consonants are contracted : *ich reiße*, *du reißest* or *reißt*. So, too, contraction often takes place when the consonants are not the same, but represent similar sounds : *ich schmelze*, *du schmildest* or *schmilzt*; *ich berste*, *du birst*. But when the verb stem ends in *sch* the s of the ending of the second person is not dropped, though no euphonic e be used : *ich wasche*, *du wäschest* or *wäschst*. A similar contraction is found less often in weak verbs : *ich tanze*, *du tanzt* or *tanzt*.

174. Important Exceptions:

- a. *Gehen*, *heben*, and *stehen* do not change.
- b. *Geben*, *nehmen*, and *treten* change ē to i.
- c. *Werden* does not change in the imperative.
- d. *Laufen*, *saufen*, and *stoßen* umlaut in the indicative.

1. *Nehmen* in these forms drops its h and, as does *treten*, doubles its final consonant in order to make the vowel short: *ich nehme*, *du nimmst*, *er nimmt*, *nimm*; *ich trete*, *du trittst*, *er tritt*, *tritt*. *Geben* does not double its consonant, but may be pronounced short: *ich gebe*, *du gibst*, *er gibt*, *gib*, which forms now replace the older spelling *du giebst*, *er giebt*, *gieb* (8).

2. These are the most important exceptions. In 266 will be found in detail the strong verb forms, some of which present further exceptions to this rule.

175. The present tense of *baden*, *bathe*; *haben*, *have*; *raten*, *advise*; *essen*, *eat*; *reißen*, *tear*; *werden*, *become*; *sein*, *be*, — *I bathe*, *I am bathing*, *I do bathe*, etc.:

INDICATIVE					
Weak			Strong		
ich bade	habe		rate	esse	reiße
du badest	hast		rätst	ist	reiß(es)t
er badet	hat		rät	ist	reißt
wir baden	haben		raten	essen	reißen
ihr badet	habet		rätet	eßt	reißt
sie baden	haben		raten	essen	reißen
			ich werde	bin	
			du wirst	bist	
			er wird	ist	
			wir werden	find	
			ihr werdet	seid	
			sie werden	find	

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Weak</i>		<i>Strong</i>		
ich	bad e	hab e	rat e	eff e
du	bad est	hab est	rat est	eff est
er	bad e	hab e	rat e	eff e
wir	bad en	hab en	rat en	eff en
ihr	bad et	hab et	rat et	eff et
sie	bad en	hab en	rat en	eff en

IMPERATIVE

<i>Weak</i>		<i>Strong</i>	
2d Singular	bad e, <i>bathe</i>	rat e	iß —
2d Plural	bad et, <i>bathe</i>	rat et	iß t
2d Sing. and Pl.	bad en Sie, <i>bathe</i>	rat en Sie	eff en Sie
2d Singular	hab e	werd e	sei —
2d Plural	hab t	werd et	sei d
2d Sing. and Pl.	hab en Sie	werd en Sie	sei en Sie

DRILL XVIII

Conjugate the present indicative of —

Weak : begegnen, danken, fassen, fragen, glauben, hören, leben, lieben, machen, reden, setzen, warten.

Strong : bergen, blasen, fließen, geben, greifen, halten, heben, heißen, kommen, lassen, messen, sitzen, stoßen, trinken.

Conjugate the present subjunctive of —

brauchen, finden, glauben, lieben, liegen, nehmen, sagen, tragen.

Conjugate the imperative of —

Weak : antworten, dienen, fürchten, leben, loben, setzen, studieren, wachen, wandern.

Strong : binden, essen, fallen, geben, halten, helfen, laden, schreßen, sinken, stehlen, verbrechen.

EXERCISE XVIII

1. Wenn ein Arbeiter fleißig arbeitet, bekommt er auch guten Lohn.
2. Dann kauft er sich ein kleines Häuschen in dem Dörfchen, in dem er arbeitet, und dort wohnt er dann mit seiner Familie.
3. Die Frau besorgt das Haus und die Kinder gehen jeden Tag in die Schule, nur nicht am Sonnabend und am Sonntag.
4. Sonntags sieht man den Vater mit der ganzen Familie im Walde spazieren; denn der deutsche Hausvater ist gern bei seiner Familie.

Come here, boy; thou takest; do we not go? let us become good; he does not find; are you not coming home? Children, be good, and work diligently. What are you eating, my son? I am eating nothing, mother. Why are you not taking that book? They are not at home to-day, but they are coming home to-morrow. Take this; I am; thou art becoming; give it to me.

1. I do not believe that you know the man.
2. He is the one who always comes here in the evening.
3. He is a small man with black eyes and black hair.
4. If he learns who we are, he [will] come here to see us.
5. For his brother is the man with whom we traveled through Germany last summer, and who sends us those beautiful books.
6. Come with me now and let us go (*pres. subj.*) to his house.
7. Perhaps we [shall] find him at home.

VOCABULARY

besorgen, *w.* to care for

das Haar, the hair

bentzéh, *adj.* German

der Lohn, the reward, wages

erfahren, *s.* to experience, learn

schicken, *w.* to send

finden, *s.* to find

schwarz, *adj.* black

fleißig, *adj.* diligent

spazieren, *w.* to take a walk

THE PAST TENSE AND PERFECT PARTICIPLE

Weak Verbs

176. The sign of past time in weak verbs is (e)t, which is added directly to the stem :

<i>machen, make</i>	<i>machte</i>	<i>gemacht</i>
<i>reden, speak</i>	<i>redete</i>	<i>geredet</i>
<i>haben, have</i>	<i>hatte</i>	<i>gehabt</i>

177. The endings for both indicative and subjunctive in the past tense are the same as the present subjunctive endings, thus making no distinction between the indicative and subjunctive in that tense, except in the case of *haben* (which umlauts and becomes *hätte*), *wissen* (230), and a few irregular verbs (179).

178. The perfect participle is formed by adding (e)t to the stem and generally prefixing *ge* (189) : *gespielt*, *geredet*.

179. A few weak verbs are irregular in the past tense and perfect participle as follows :

a. *bringen* and *denken* have a vowel and consonant change in the past tense and perfect participle, and umlaut in the past subjunctive :

<i>bringen, bring</i>	<i>brachte</i>	<i>gebracht</i>	<i>brachte</i>
<i>denken, think</i>	<i>dachte</i>	<i>gedacht</i>	<i>dachte</i>

b. *brennen*, *lennen*, *nennen*, *rennen*, *senden*, and *wenden* have a vowel change in the past indicative and perfect participle, but the past subjunctive is regular :

<i>brennen, burn</i>	<i>brannte</i>	<i>gebrannt</i>	<i>brennte</i>
<i>lennen, know</i>	<i>fannte</i>	<i>gefannt</i>	<i>lennete</i>
<i>nennen, name</i>	<i>nannte</i>	<i>genannt</i>	<i>nennete</i>
<i>rennen, run</i>	<i>rannte</i>	<i>gerannt</i>	<i>rennte</i>
<i>senden, send</i>	<i>sandte</i>	<i>gesandt</i>	<i>sendete</i>
<i>wenden, turn</i>	<i>wandte</i>	<i>gewandt</i>	<i>wendete</i>

1. *senden* and *wenden* are often found without this vowel-change : *senden*, *sendete*, *gesendet*; *wenden*, *wenbete*, *gewendet*.

180. The past tense of *machen*, *make*; *reden*, *speak*; *senden*, *send*; *haben*, *have*, — *I made*, *I was making*, *I did make*, etc. :

INDICATIVE

ich mach te	red et e	sand te	hat te
du mach test	red et est	sand test	hat test
er mach te	red et e	sand te	hat te
wir mach ten	red et en	sand ten	hat ten
ihr mach tet	red et et	sand tet	hat tet
sie mach ten	red et en	sand ten	hat ten

SUBJUNCTIVE

ich mach te	red et e	send et e	hät te
du mach test	red et est	send et est	hät test
er mach te	red et e	send et e	hät te
wir mach ten	red et en	send et en	hät ten
ihr mach tet	red et et	send et et	hät tet
sie mach ten	red et en	send et en	hät ten

EXPRESSIONS OF MEASURE

181. After numerals, nouns of measure, except feminines in *e*, are not declined : *zehn Fuß*, *ten feet*; *sechs Uhr*, *six o'clock (six hours)*; *zwei Flaschen Wein*, *two bottles of wine*.

182. After words of measure the noun denoting the thing measured stands in apposition, and not in the genitive : *ein Pfund Kaffee*, *one pound of coffee*; *ein Fuß Wasser*, *a foot of water*; *mit etwas Gutem*, *with something good*.

1. However, if a noun be qualified, it may be put into the genitive : *mit einem Glas frischem Wasser* (or *frischen Wassers*), *with a glass of fresh water*.

DRILL XIX

Give the principal parts of —

antworten, atmen, brummen, danken, enden, freuen, glauben, kaufen, leben, öffnen, reden, sezen, warten, zeichnen.

Conjugate the present, all modes, of —

arbeiten, dienen, fasten, holen, pressen, regnen, sezen, wohnen.

Conjugate the past tense of —

beten, enden, folgen, fürchten, hoffen, lachen, reisen, segnen, suchen.

EXERCISE XIX

1. Heute morgen begegneten Karl und ich einer alten Frau auf der Straße. 2. Sie hatte allerlei Blumen zu verkaufen. 3. Sie war scheinbar sehr arm, und sagte uns, daß sie drei Kinder zu Hause habe. 4. Also kauften wir einige Blumen, und bezahlten ihr zwei Mark dafür. 5. Sie dankte uns und sagte, sie wolle ihren Kindern etwas Gutes zu essen dafür kaufen. 6. Denn sie bekommen gewöhnlich nur ein Stück hartes Brot und ein Glas Wasser. 7. Aber heute bekommen sie ein Stück Fleisch dazu, und vielleicht auch ein Glas frische Milch.

I did not pay too much for that. Where is my book? I put (legen) it on the table. What are you doing there? I am doing nothing, I am only waiting. I do not believe. Why do you always take my book? Have you none? I had one, but where is it? Take your hat off in the house. A piece of meat; a pair of good shoes; on this piece of land; in a glass of cold water. There are ten feet of water in this river. I had only one glass of red wine.

1. The life of the poor people in this town was formerly very interesting. 2. They lived in small houses, often three or four families in one house, and in each family there were generally

six or more small children. 3. The father worked the whole day, and the mother often too. 4. The children were alone at home or on the streets. 5. When they had money they bought a piece of stale (old) bread for the children. 6. If they did not have it, the children waited until evening. 7. But now everything is better; for the city bought the little houses, and is building better houses for them.

VOCABULARY

allein', adj. alone

bezahlen, w. to pay

danken, w. with dat. to thank

dazu, adv. thereto, in addition, also

essen, s. to eat

etwas, indef. indecl. pr. something

das Fleisch, the meat

frisch, adj. fresh

das Geld, the money

gewöhnlich, adj. usual

das Glas, the glass

hart, adj. hard

die Milch, the milk

scheinbar, adj. apparent

das Stück, the piece

wollen, w. to be willing, want

WORD LIST III

allein	Fleisch	reden
also	fleißig	Reise
alt	Freude	schicken
ander	früh	schlecht
Äpfel	ganz	schön
arm	Geld	Schule
Arm	genug	Schüler
bald	gern	schwarz
bauen	Glas	sehr
begegnen	glauben	spazieren
bezahlen	groß	spielen
bis	Großmutter	Staat
Brief	Haar	Straße
Brot	hart	Stück
danken	heute	studieren
dass	hoch	tun
der	Hunger	überall
deutsch	Ihr	Uhr
doch	jung	ungefähr
eigentlich	Knabe	viel
einig-	lang	warten
Einwohner	Leute	warum
Eltern	lieben	weil
Ende	machen	weit
erhalten	Nacht	welch
erwarten	nah	wenn
etlich-	neu	wer
Familie	niemand	wie
fast	noch	Woche
Feld	obgleich	wohl
fertig	oder	wünschen
finden	Paar	zeigen

Strong Verbs

183. The sign of past time in a strong verb is an ablaut (164). The endings of the past tense are —

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Sing.	1. —	e
	2. (e)ſt	eſt
	3. —	e
Plur.	1. en	en
	2. (e)t	et
	3. en	en

184. The past subjunctive umlauts whenever possible (2): tragen, trug, trüge. For irregularities in the past subjunctive see 268, 1.

185. The past tense of tragen, *carry*; bleiben, *remain*:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	
ich	trug —	blieb —	trüg e
du	trug ſt	blieb ſt	trüg eſt
er	trug —	blieb —	trüg e
wir	trug en	blieb en	trüg en
ihr	trug t	blieb t	trüg et
sie	trug en	blieb en	trüg en

186. The perfect participle ends in en and generally has the prefix ge (169); the vowel may or may not be the same as that of the infinitive:

kommen, <i>come</i>	fam	gekommen
singen, <i>sing</i>	sang	gesungen
fliehen, <i>flee</i>	floh	geflohen
graben, <i>dig</i>	grub	gegraben

187. Strong verbs are classified, regardless of historical development, according to the vowel of the infinitive. The following table will show the ablaut of the past tense and perfect participle, the three columns representing the three principal parts. Any part may be formed by substituting in the stem the vowel for that part in the table, and adding the proper endings. There is rarely a consonantal change in the stem, unless the quantity of the vowel of the past tense differs from that of the vowel of the infinitive, in which case certain single consonants are doubled and double consonants are simplified (191, 201).

188. Ablaut Classes of the Strong Verb :

	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PAST INDICATIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE	SUPPLEMENTARY VERBS
I.	ə	i ie u	a	gehen, hauen, heißen laufen, rufen, stoßen
II.	ē ē(hl) ē ē(f)		ē ō ō ē	bitten, kommen liegen, sitzen
III.	ei	i ie	i ie	
IV.	i i(mm, nn)	a	u ō	
V.	ie	o	o	Most irregular verbs

i. Exceptions :

sein, <i>be</i>	war	gewesen
stehen, <i>stand</i>	stand	gestanden
tun, <i>do</i>	tat	getan

I. The *a* Class

189.

	i		
a	ie	a	gehen, hauen, heißen
			laufen, rufen, stoßen
u			

190. The characteristic of this class is that the vowel of the infinitive is the same as that of the perfect participle. Hence *gehen* (formerly *gangen*), *hauen*, *heißen*, *laufen*, *rufen*, and *stoßen* are included as supplementary verbs. The past tense of a verbs is formed with one of the three vowels *i*, *ie*, or *u*, dividing the class into three groups, as follows:

i GROUP

*fangen, catch**gehen, go**hangen, hang*

ie GROUP

*blasen, blow**braten, roast**fallen, fall**halten, hold**lassen, let, leave**raten, advise**schlafen, sleep**hauen, hew**heißen, call**laufen, run**rufen, call**stoßen, push*

u GROUP

*baden, bake**fahren, go**graben, dig**laden, load**schaffen, create**schlagen, strike**tragen, carry**wachsen, grow**waschen, wash*

191. The vowel of the past tense of a verbs is long whenever possible, double consonants — except *ß*, which becomes *ß* (2) — simplifying: *fallen, fiel*; *baden, bat* (2); but *lassen, ließ*.

192. Paradigms:

*fangen, catch**gehen, go**ging**ging**gefangen**gegangen*

<i>hauen, hew</i>	<i>hieb</i>	<i>gehauen</i>
<i>lassen, let, leave</i>	<i>ließ</i>	<i>gelassen</i>
<i>laufen, run</i>	<i>lief</i>	<i>gelaufen</i>
<i>tragen, carry</i>	<i>trug</i>	<i>getragen</i>

DRILL XX

Give the principal parts of —

* *backen, blasen, braten, fahren, fallen, fangen, gehen, graben, halten, hangen, hauen, heißen, laden, lassen, laufen, raten, rufen, schaffen, schlafen, schlagen, stoßen, tragen, wachsen, waschen.*

Give the present indicative of —

blasen, braten, fangen, gehen, halten, heißen, lassen, laufen, stoßen, waschen.

Give the present subjunctive and imperative of —

fallen, graben, hangen, hauen, raten, rufen, schlagen.

Give the past indicative and subjunctive of —

backen, braten, fahren, fallen, halten, heißen, laden, schaffen, stoßen, wachsen.

EXERCISE XX

Der Totenkopf

Ein vornehmer Herr ritt auf einem schönen Pferde durchs Feld, blickte stolz auf die armen Leute herab, die mühsam arbeiteten, und dachte bei sich: „Wie schön und reich und vornehm bin ich! Ich bin doch recht viel mehr als diese Leute da.“ Eben ritt er vor dem Gottesacker vorbei, und sah den Totengräber; der hatte einen Totenkopf in der Hand, und betrachtete ihn aufmerksam. Da hielt der

* This list, like the similar lists of the following drills, contains all verbs belonging to its class.

Herr an und fragte: „Warum siehst du den Totenkopf so an, Alter?“ Der Totengräber blickte den vornehmen Herrn an, und dann wieder den Totenkopf, und sagte: „Ich wollte nur gern wissen, ob er einem Vornehmen gehört hat, oder einem Bettler; ich kann's aber nicht herausbringen.“

Why did you run? We were going. I did not fall. Where did she go? I am not going. Run home, child. Run home, children. What are you carrying in your hat, my son? I am carrying apples; I have some for you, and one of them is for father. Have you my book? No, I had it, but I left it on the table; it was there a moment ago.

I went to the country to-day and was gone (fort) the whole day. I went first to a little village, which is not far from my uncle's house, and then drove to his house in a wagon which was waiting for me. There we had a good dinner. In the afternoon we all went to the river and caught fish. My cousin caught one more than I, but two of his fish fell into the water again. We carried them to his house and left them there. In the evening I went home.

II. The e Class

193.	ē	ē	
	ē(hl)	ō	bitten, kommen
	ē	ō	liegen, sitzen
	ē(f)	ē	

194. The vowel of the past tense of e verbs is always *ə*, the perfect participle varying according to the quantity and position of the *e* of the infinitive. The supplementary verbs were formerly all regular, having a vowel that would bring them into this class. For the past subjunctive see 288, I.

195. The vowel of the past tense of e verbs is long whenever possible, double consonants, except *ff*, simplifying (191): *erschreden*, *erschraf*; *treffen*, *traf*; but *meßen*, *maß*.

196. Werden has two forms in the past indicative singular: the strong forms *ich ward*, *du wardst*, *er ward*, and the weak forms *ich wurde*, *du wurdest*, *er wurde*. The plural has but the one form *wir wurden*, *ihr wurdet*, *sie wurden*. The subjunctive is *ich würde*, *du würdest*, etc. (288, I).

197. Paradigms:

bitten, ask	bat	gebeten
essen, eat	aß	gegessen
geben, give	gab	gegeben
kommen, come	kam	gekommen
liegen, lie	lag	gelegen
meßen, measure	maß	gemessen
nehmen, take	nahm	genommen
schreden, be frightened	schrat	geschroden
sitzen, sit	saß	gesessen
stehlen, steal	stahl	gestohlen
werden, become	ward, wurde	geworden
werfen, throw	warf	geworfen

PREFIXES

198. Almost any part of speech may be used as a prefix of the verb: *haus-halten*, *frei-sprechen*, *vor-kommen*. Such prefixes are either separable or inseparable.

199. Inseparable Prefixes: The inseparable prefixes are *be*, *ent* (*emp*), *er*, *ge*, *ver*, and *zer*. They are never accented and never separated from the verb, and cause the omission of the prefix *ge* in the perfect participle (189):

bekommen, get
versprechen, promise

bekam
versprach

bekommen
versprochen

DRILL XXI

Give the principal parts of —

befehlen, bergen, bersten, bitten, brechen, empfehlen, essen, fressen, geben, gelten, genesen, geschehen, helfen, kommen, lesen, liegen, messen, nehmen, schelten, schreden, sehen, sizen, sprechen, stiechen, stehlen, sterben, treffen, treten, verderben, vergessen, werben, werden, werfen.

Conjugate the present indicative of —

befehlen, bersten, bitten, fressen, geben, helfen, lesen, liegen, schelten, sizen, treten, werden, fallen, fahren, laden, raten.

Conjugate the present subjunctive and imperative of —

bergen, brechen, essen, gelten, kommen, nehmen, schreden, sprechen, sterben, verderben, werden, werfen, halten, wachsen.

Conjugate the past indicative and subjunctive of —

empfehlen, geschehen, helfen, lesen, messen, sizen, treffen, vergessen, werben, baden, graben, hauen, lassen, rufen, schlagen.

EXERCISE XXI

Übung macht den Meister

Es war einmal ein Mann, der mit einem großen Ochsen umherreiste, denselben auf die Schultern nahm, auf der Straße eine gute Weile hin und her trug, und damit viel Geld verdiente. Man fragte den Mann, wie er zu dieser seltenen Stärke gekommen sei. Er antwortete: „Als dieser Ochse noch ein Kalb war, trug ich ihn täglich ein paar Stunden in meinem Hause auf und ab. Das Kalb wurde nun wohl alle Tage schwerer, allein meine Kräfte wurden auch alle Tage größer. So wurde ich am Ende so stark, daß ich sogar einen Ochsen tragen kann.“

Where did you get that book? I was reading an old book when my mother came into the room, saw it, took it, and gave me this one. I promised her to read it. Do not eat those apples; here are better ones. I am getting a better apple. He is getting better. I became ill. Thou art not helping. I was lying. She sat. Eaten; forgotten; having promised; to come. Be thou; take one; come here; become better.

Lord A. went through a village one day (*gen.*) and met a boy who was leading a calf. The boy did not take his hat off, and the lord asked him, “Do you know me?” The boy answered, “Yes.” “What is my name?” asked the lord. “Lord A.,” answered the boy. “Why do you not take your hat off, if you know me?” asked the lord. “I will (*will*) do it,” the boy answered, “if you [*will*] hold the calf.”

III. The *ei* Class

200.	<i>ei</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>i</i> (short)
		<i>ie</i>	<i>ie</i> (long)

201. The vowel of the past tense of *ei* verbs is short whenever possible, *f*, *p*, and *t* doubling, and the *d* of *leiden* and *schneiden* changing to *tt*:

<i>beissen, bite</i>	<i>biss</i>	<i>gebissen</i>
<i>greifen, seize</i>	<i>griff</i>	<i>gegriffen</i>
<i>leiden, suffer</i>	<i>litt</i>	<i>gelitten</i>
<i>reiben, rub</i>	<i>rieb</i>	<i>gerieben</i>
<i>schleichen, sneak</i>	<i>schlich</i>	<i>geschlichen</i>

202. **Separable Prefixes:** All other prefixes (199) are separable. They are always accented, and with all personal verb-forms are placed at the end of their clause. In the infinitive and the perfect participle the prefix precedes the *zu* or *ge*, and the three parts are written as one word: *Wir kommen heute nicht an, aber morgen hoffen wir anzukommen.* *We shall not arrive to-day, but we hope to arrive to-morrow.*

<i>ankommen, arrive</i>	<i>kam an</i>	<i>angekommen</i>
<i>auflegen, lay upon</i>	<i>legte auf</i>	<i>aufgelegt</i>

1. Present Indicative of *ablegen*, *lay down*, *legte ab*, *abgelegt*:

<i>ich lege ab, I lay down</i>	<i>wir legen ab</i>
<i>du legst ab</i>	<i>ihr legt ab</i>
<i>er legt ab</i>	<i>sie legen ab</i>

2. In dependent clauses, the verb being placed last (68, 158), the separable prefix precedes its verb and is joined to it: *als er heute ankam, when he arrived to-day.*

203. **Doubtful Prefixes:** The prefixes *durch*, *hinter*, *über*, *um*, *unter*, *wider*, and *wieder* are both separable and inseparable. When

separable the prefix is accented (203) and preserves its distinctive meaning: *übersetzen*, *to set across*. When inseparable the prefix is unaccented (199) and loses much of its individuality, its meaning being blended with that of the verb: *übersetzen*, *to translate*. That is, the separable prefix has a separate accent and meaning; the inseparable prefix is never separated from the verb in form, accent, or meaning (cf. Eng. *to overlook* and *to look over*): *Seht mich niemand über?* *Will no one put me across?* *Wir übersetzen jeden Tag einen Kapitel.* *We translate a chapter every day.*

204. The simple forms (synopsis of the simple tenses) of *fortlaufen*, *to run away*:

PRINCIPAL PARTS	fortlaufen	lief fort	fortgelaufen
SIMPLE TENSES			IMPERATIVE
er läuft fort, <i>he runs away</i>		laufe fort, <i>run away</i>	
er laufe fort		läuft fort	
er lief fort, <i>he ran away</i>		laufen Sie fort	
er liefe fort			

DRILL XXII

Give the principal parts of —

beflecken, beißen, bleiben, gedeihen, gleichen, gleiten, greifen, kneifen, leiben, leihen, meiden, pfeisen, preisen, reiben, reißen, reiten, scheiden, scheinen, schleichen, schleifen, schmeißen, schneiden, schreiben, schreien, schreiten, schweigen, speien, steigen, streichen, streiten, treiben, weichen, weisen, zeihen.

Give the principal parts and simple forms of —

baden, befehlen, beißen, bergen, bekleiden, bersten, bitten, blasen, bleiben, braten, brechen, empfehlen, essen, fahren, fallen, fangen, fressen, geben, gehen, gelten, geschehen, gleichen, gleiten, graben, greifen, halten, hängen, hauen, heißen, helfen, kommen, laden, lassen, laufen, leiden, lesen, liegen, meiden, messen, nehmen, raten, reiben, rufen, schelten, schlafen, schrecken, schreiten, speien, stehlen, stoßen, treten.

EXERCISE XXII

Der alte Mann

Ein vornehmer Herr traf einen alten Mann, der einen Nussbaum pflanzte. Er ging auf den Greis zu und fragte, wie alt er sei. „Über achtzig Jahre,“ war die Antwort, „aber, gottlob! noch gesund wie einer von dreißig.“ „Wie lange gedenkst du denn zu leben,“ sprach der Herr weiter, „daß du in solchem Alter noch junge Bäume pflanzest, die so spät Früchte tragen? Warum machst du dir so vergebliche Arbeit?“

„Herr,“ gab der Alte zur Antwort, „ich bin zufrieden, wenn ich die Bäume gepflanzt habe, ohne mich darum zu bekümmern, ob ich oder ein anderer die Früchte derselben genießen werde. Es ist billig, daß wir tun, wie unsere Väter taten. Sie pflanzten Bäume, deren Früchte wir essen; da wir nun der Vater Arbeit genossen haben, warum sollen wir gegen unsere Nachkommen liebloser sein, als jene gegen uns waren? Ich denke, was der Vater nicht genießt, das erntet der Sohn.“

Does he not arrive to-day? No, he arrived yesterday. Take off your hat. We are running away. They laid the book down. He cut his hand and became suddenly ill. We are going to town. Our friends did not come to-day. Call me when they arrive. My mother asked, “Did you take away my glass of water?” I do not believe it. Why did you not remain at home? I did remain at home, but not in the house.

Bonn is a beautiful old city which lies on the Rhine. In it once lived three men who were all very young. However, they wanted to do nothing the whole day but sleep. So they went to a cave, and there they slept seven years, when they heard a noise, and one of (von) them said, “That was a cow,” and fell asleep again.

IV. The i Class

205.	i	a	u
	i(mm, nn)		o

206. The vowel of the past tense of i verbs is always short, but the subjunctive is sometimes irregular (266, 1):

singen, sing	sang	gesungen
schwimmen, swim	schwamm	geschwommen
finnen, think	fann	gesonnen

207. Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse: The subjunctive is used in indirect discourse (276, d) when the speaker is unwilling to vouch for the accuracy of a statement, or in order to show that a statement is made on the authority of another person: *Er sagt mir, daß er eine bessere Uhr habe, He tells me that he has a better watch (but I am not so sure about it).* The indicative would mean that the speaker considers the statement true: *Er sagt mir, daß Berlin die Hauptstadt des Deutschen Reiches ist, He tells me that Berlin is the capital of the German Empire.*

1. For the tense of the subjunctive in indirect discourse, see 276, d, 1.

DRILL XXIII

Give the principal parts of —

beginnen, binden, dringen, finden, gelingen, gewinnen, klingen, mißlingen, ringen, rinnen, schlingen, schwimmen, schwinden, schwingen, singen, sinken, sinnen, spinnen, springen, stinken, trinken, winden, zwingen.

Give the principal parts and simple forms of —

abschneiden, aufhalten, backen, besprechen, bitten, erwerben, fortgehen, kneifen, leihen, losbinden, reiben, stehlen, ringen, sehen, streichen, wegstoßen.

EXERCISE XXIII

Der alte Mann und der Tod

Ein alter Mann hatte sich im Walde Holz gesammelt. Mit einem schweren Bündel auf dem Rücken machte er sich auf den Rückweg. Ganz ermüdet legte er an dem Wege sein Bündel ab, und setzte sich nieder, um ein wenig auszuruhen. Er dachte über sein Leben nach, wie dasselbe nur Mühe und Arbeit sei, und wie er auch in seinem Alter nichts Besseres zu erwarten habe. Da rief er mit lauter Stimme den Tod herbei, daß er ihn doch von allem Übel erlöse. Sogleich stand der Tod mit seiner Sense vor ihm und fragte ihn, was er wolle. „Ei, daß du mir aufhelfest,” sagte der Alte.

He said that he was older than I ; but I am a year older than he. She asked me where her hat was. I told her that it was not here. She looked for it, but did not find it, so I helped her. We were looking for it when her brother came into the room with it. The birds were singing and jumping in the trees. My dog swam across the river yesterday. He asked me when I was going with him. I told him that I did not have enough money to go again ; but he said that I did not need any money, that he had enough for us both.

Seven years later the second one awoke and said, “No, it was an ox.” Then he closed his eyes, and they slept seven years again, when the third one awoke and asked, “What cow? what ox?” That was all, and everything was silent again. They say that the three young men are still sleeping in the cave near the city of Bonn.

V. The ie Class

208. ie o ö Most irregular verbs.

209. To this class belong also most strong verbs whose vowel will not permit of their belonging regularly to any class: *gären*, *fügen*, *saugen*; also a number of irregular verbs (see Drill) with the vowel *e* or *i*, which have *o* in the past tense and the perfect participle: *heben*, *klimmen*.

<i>gären, ferment</i>	<i>gor</i>	<i>gegoren</i>
<i>heben, raise</i>	<i>hob</i>	<i>gehoben</i>
<i>klimmen, climb</i>	<i>klomm</i>	<i>geklimmen</i>
<i>lügen, lie</i>	<i>log</i>	<i>gelogen</i>
<i>saugen, suck</i>	<i>sog</i>	<i>gesogen</i>

210. The vowel of the past tense of ie verbs is short whenever possible, *f* doubling and the *d* of *sieden* changing to *tt*:

<i>frieren, freeze</i>	<i>fror</i>	<i>gefroren</i>
<i>triften, drip</i>	<i>troff</i>	<i>getroffen</i>
<i>sieden, boil</i>	<i>sott</i>	<i>gesotten</i>
<i>ziehen, draw</i>	<i>zog</i>	<i>gezogen</i>

DRILL XXIV

Give the principal parts of —

(a) *biegen*, *bieten*, *fliegen*, *fliehen*, *fließen*, *frieren*, *genießen*,
gießen, *kriechen*, *riechen*, *schieben*, *schießen*, *schließen*, *sieden*, *sprießen*,
stieben, *triefen*, *verdrießen*, *verlieren*, *wiegen*, *ziehen*.

(b) *bewegen*, *fechten*, *flechten*, *gären*, *heben*, *klimmen*, *löschen*,
lügen, *quellen*, *saufen*, *saugen*, *scheren*, *schmelzen*, *schwellen*, *schwören*,
trügen, *wägen*, *weben*.

Give the principal parts and simple forms of —

abfließen, *befehlen*, *genießen*, *hängen*, *hineinblasen*, *pfeifen*,
rinnen, *schrecken*, *sein*, *sprießen*, *streiten*, *vorlesen*, *werden*.

EXERCISE XXIV

Der Wolf auf dem Totenbette

Der Wolf lag auf seinem Totenbette, und schickte einen prüfenden Blick über sein vergangenes Leben zurück. „Ich bin freilich ein Sünder,” sagte er, „aber doch, hoffe ich, keiner von den größten. Ich habe Böses getan, aber auch viel Gutes. Einst, erinnere ich mich, kam mir ein Lamm so nahe, daß ich es gar leicht hätte töten können, und ich tat ihm nichts.“ „Und das alles kann ich dir bezeugen,” fiel ihm Freund Fuchs, der ihm zu Tode bereiten half, ins Wort; „denn ich erinnere mich noch gar wohl der Sache. Es war eben zu der Zeit, als du so jämmerlich frank warst.“

The eagle flew into that tree. He bent his stick until it broke, and then threw away the pieces. I found them and took them away. The fox said that he was a great sinner, but that he hoped he was not one of the greatest. He asked me whether I was a great sinner too. But I did not think that I was so great a (a so great) sinner as he, for I did more good than he.

There was once a very rich man who lived in a beautiful castle near a small village. He loved the people who lived in the village, and tried to help them. He planted beautiful trees near their houses, and entertained their children in his castle. But the people of that village were not diligent, and were unhappy because they were not rich like their friend in the castle.

THE PERFECT TENSES

211. Compound tenses (170) are divided into two groups: the perfect tenses and the future tenses.

212. There are two perfect tenses, the present perfect, or simply the perfect, and the past perfect, or pluperfect.

213. The perfect tenses, denoting perfected or completed action (280), are based on the perfect participle, to which is added the corresponding simple tense, same mode, of the auxiliary *haben* or *sein*.

1. That is, to form the present perfect indicative of a verb, use the present indicative of the auxiliary with the perfect participle of the verb. To form the perfect infinitive, use the infinitive of the auxiliary with the perfect participle of the verb: *Ich habe gesehen*, *I have seen*; *gekommen sein*, *to have come*.

2. As will be seen in 280, the perfect tense denotes a single act in past time, or completed action which is independent of any other event, and consequently the German perfect is more often to be rendered by the English past than by the English perfect: *Er ist gestern gekommen*, *He came yesterday*. For action begun in the past and continued through the present, see 277, a, 1.

214. *Haben* is used as the auxiliary in perfect tenses of all transitive verbs and of such intransitives as do not denote a change of condition or position. All others take *sein*. Thus *halten*, *hold*, and *stehen*, *stand*, take *haben*; *kommen*, *come*, and *sterben*, *die*, take *sein*.

1. But *bleiben*, *remain*, *gelingen*, *succeed*, *geschehen*, *happen*, *glücken*, *prosper*, and *sein*, *be*, all take the auxiliary *sein*.

2. Intransitive verbs denoting a change of position often take the auxiliary *haben* when the idea of transition is subordinate: *Ich bin aufs Land gefahren*, *I drove into the country*; but *Ich habe gefahren*, *I drove*.

215. The perfect tenses of *halten*, *hold*, *kommen*, *come*:

PRESENT PERFECT

I have held (I held), etc., I have come (I came), etc.

Indicative:

ich habe	gehalten	ich bin	gekommen
du hast		du bist	
er hat		er ist	
wir haben		wir sind	
ihr habt		ihr seid	
sie haben		sie sind	

Subjunctive:

ich habe	gehalten	ich sei	gekommen
du habest		du seiest	
er habe		er sei	
wir haben		wir seien	
ihr habet		ihr seiet	
sie haben		sie seien	

PAST PERFECT

I had held, etc., I had come, etc.

Indicative:

ich hatte	gehalten	ich war	gekommen
du hattest		du warst	
er hatte		er war	
wir hatten		wir waren	
ihr hattet		ihr wart	
sie hatten		sie waren	

Subjunctive:

ich hätte	gehalten	ich wäre	gekommen
du hättest		du wärest	
er hätte		er wäre	
wir hätten		wir wären	
ihr hättest		ihr wäret	
sie hätten		sie wären	

PERFECT INFINITE

gehalten haben, *to have held* gekommen sein, *to have come*

216. Synopsis of kommen, *come*, kam, gekommen:

SIMPLE FORMS

er kommt	komme
er komme	kommt
er kam	kommen Sie
er käme	

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

kommenb	gekommen
kommen	gekommen sein

PERFECT TENSES

er ist	} gekommen
er sei	
er war	
er wäre	

DRILL XXV

Give a synopsis of —

Strong

baden, <i>bake</i>	geben, <i>give</i>	treten, <i>tread</i>
beginnen, <i>begin</i>	gewinnen, <i>win</i>	tun, <i>do</i>
bersten, <i>burst</i>	hauen, <i>hew</i>	verlieren, <i>lose</i>
bleiben, <i>remain</i>	heruntertragen, <i>carry</i>	vorkommen, <i>occur</i>
braten, <i>roast</i>	down	wachsen, <i>grow</i>
empfehlen, <i>commend</i>	liegen, <i>lie</i>	wegspringen, <i>jump away</i>
erbleichen, <i>turn pale</i>	niedersfallen, <i>fall</i>	werfen, <i>throw</i>
essen, <i>eat</i>	down	wiegen, <i>weigh</i>
frieren, <i>freeze</i>	rufen, <i>call</i>	ziehen, <i>draw</i>

Weak

aufmachen, <i>open</i>	handeln, <i>deal</i>	reisen, <i>travel</i>
enden, <i>end</i>	holen, <i>fetch</i>	spekulieren, <i>speculate</i>
fürchten, <i>fear</i>	lieben, <i>love</i>	warnen, <i>warn</i>
glauben, <i>believe</i>	räfieren, <i>shave</i>	wohnen, <i>dwell</i>

EXERCISE XXV

Seltsamer Spazierritt

Ein Mann reitet auf seinem Esel nach Hause und läßt seinen Sohn zu Fuß nebenher laufen. Kommt ein Wanderer und sagt: „Das ist nicht recht, Vater, daß Ihr reitet und Euren Sohn laufen läßt; Ihr habt stärkere Beine.“ Da stieg der Vater vom Esel herab und ließ den Sohn reiten. Kommt wieder ein Wandersmann und sagt: „Das ist nicht recht, Bursche, daß du reitest und deinen Vater zu Fuß gehen läßt; du hast jüngere Beine.“ Da saßen beide auf und ritten eine Strecke. Kommt ein dritter Wandersmann und sagt: „Was ist das für ein Unverstand; zwei Kerle auf einem schwachen Tiere!“ Da stiegen beide ab und gingen alle drei zu Fuß. Kommt ein vierter Wanderer und sagt: „Ihr seid drei seltsame Gesellen. Ist's nicht genug, wenn zwei zu Fuß gehen?“ Da banden sie dem Esel die Beine zusammen, zogen eine starke Stange durch, und trugen den Esel nach Hause.

I have been; thou hast become; we have not been following you; they did not begin; you had; where had they been remaining? we were traveling; I did not run to-day; ridden; thou art come; I have said. The traveler said to the boy that he had younger legs than his father, and that younger legs are stronger; but another traveler thought that older legs were stronger.

A dog had stolen a piece of meat, and wished to swim across the river with it. In the river he saw his image and thought that it was another dog with a piece of meat. He wished to have this also, snapped at it, and let his own piece fall into the river.

THE FUTURE TENSES

217. There are two future tenses, — the present, simply called the future, and the past or future perfect.

218. The future tenses, denoting limitless action (270), are formed by adding the proper mode of the present tense of werden to the infinitive of the verb, the present infinitive to form the future, the perfect infinitive (218, 1) for the future perfect: ich werde geben, ich werde gegeben haben.

219. The conditional, which is formed similarly with the past subjunctive of werden, sometimes has future force and may then be considered a second subjunctive of the future and classified with the future tenses: ich würde geben, *I should give*; ich würde gegeben haben, *I should have given*.

220. The future tenses of lieben, *love*:

FUTURE

I shall (should) love, etc.

Indicative:

ich werde	lieben
du wirst	
er wird	
wir werden	
ihr werdet	
sie werden	

Subjunctive:

ich werde	lieben
du werdest	
er werde	
wir werden	
ihr werdet	
sie werden	

Conditional:

ich würde	lieben
du würdest	
er würde	
wir würden	
ihr würdet	
sie würden	

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall (should) have loved, etc.

Indicative:

ich werde	}	geliebt haben
du wirst		
er wird		
wir werden		
ihr werdet		

Subjunctive:

ich werde	}	geliebt haben
du werdest		
er werde		
wir werden		
ihr werdet		

Conditional:

ich würde	}	geliebt haben
du würdest		
er würde		
wir würden		
ihr würdet		

sie würden

221. Synopsis of *sehen*, *see*, *sah*, *gesehen*:

SIMPLE FORMS

er sieht	sieh
er sehe	seht
er sah	sehen Sie
er sähe	

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

sehend	gesehen
sehen	gesehen haben

PERFECT TENSES

er hat	}	gesehen
er habe		
er hatte		
er hätte		

FUTURE TENSES

er wird	}	sehen
er werde		
er würde		

er wird	}	gesehen haben
er werde		
er würde		

222. **Unreal Conditions**: The subjunctive is used to express an unreal condition (276, c), the past tense expressing a present condition, and the past perfect tense a past condition: *Wenn ich reich wäre, gäbe ich es dir gern, If I were rich, I should give it to you gladly.*

1. The conditional and conditional perfect are often substituted for the past and past perfect subjunctive respectively in the conclusion or independent clause: *Wenn ich reich wäre, würde ich es dir gern geben, If I were rich, I should give it to you gladly.*

DRILL XXVI

Give a synopsis of —

Strong

abbeißen, bite off	gießen, pour	schreiten, stride
brechen, break	heissen, call	sinken, sink
fortfahren, drive away	lügen, lie	treffen, hit
gären, ferment	saugen, suck	wägen, weigh
gestehen, confess	schleichen, sneak	winden, 'wind

Weak

besuchen, visit	losmachen, unfasten	mitteilen, impart
führen, lead	loben, praise	zuhören, listen

EXERCISE XXVI

Der Sperling und die Taube

Ein Knabe hatte einen Sperling gefangen, und sah dann auf dem Dache eine Taube. „Die ist besser,“ dachte er, ließ den Sperling wieder fliegen und stieg auf das Dach, um die Taube zu fangen. Diese aber wartete nicht, sondern flog davon. Da saß der Knabe ohne Sperling und ohne Taube traurig auf dem Dache, und gedachte des Sprichwortes: *Besser ein Sperling in der Hand als eine Taube auf dem Dache.*

Der Fuchs und die Trauben

An einem Weinstocke hingen ganz oben einige reife Trauben. Ein Fuchs kam vorbei, sah die Trauben, und wollte sie haben. Er sprang in die Höhe, aber alle Mühe war vergebens. Das verdroß ihn sehr. „Die Trauben sind grün und sauer; ich wollte sie gar nicht haben.“ So sagte er, und ging weiter.

We shall come to-morrow. If you were here, we should all go to the country. If they had gone to the country, we should not have seen them. Had I gone into the house, I should have found the old man. I shall not let the sparrow fly until I shall have caught the dove. If the grapes had not been so high, they would not have been so sour.

There was once a man, who was on his way home, when he came to a large house, in front of which an old man was working. Since it was already late, he asked the old man whether he might (dürfen) remain there over night. “I am not the father of the house,” answered the latter; “go into the house; you will find my father there; ask him.”

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES

223. The modal auxiliaries are *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, and *wollen*. They are really preterit-present verbs, being the past tense of strong verbs which acquired present meaning, the deficiencies being then supplied with weak forms.

224. As now conjugated the modal auxiliaries present the following irregularities :

- a.* A vowel-change in the present indicative singular, except in *sollen*, and no endings in the first and third singular (183).
- b.* No imperative, except of *wollen*.
- c.* The stem loses its umlaut, if it have any, in the past indicative and the perfect participle.
- d.* In the compound tenses the perfect participle is used only when there is no complementary infinitive; otherwise the present infinitive is substituted: *Ich habe es nicht gewollt*, *I did not want it*; but *Ich habe es nicht tun wollen*, *I did not want to do it*.
- e.* In the future perfect tense, with a complementary infinitive, *haben* precedes the other infinitive forms, the complementary infinitive following it: *Ich würde ihn nicht haben sehen können*, *I should not have been able to see him*.

225. *Fühlen*, *heißen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *lassen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *machen*, *sehen*, and rarely *brauchen*, are used like the modal auxiliaries, taking a complementary infinitive without *zu* (187), and substituting the present infinitive for the perfect participle in compound tenses (224, *d*): *Ich habe ihn gehen hören*, *I heard him go*.

226. Irregularity of Order: In transposed order the personal part of a compound tense of the modal auxiliary, and a few other verbs used like them (225), when used with a complementary infinitive, is not placed last (158), but just before the non-personal verb forms: *Er sagte, daß er nicht hat kommen wollen*, *He said that he did not want to come*.

227. Paradigms :

dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
PRESENT INDICATIVE					
ich darf –	kann –	mag –	muß –	soll –	will –
du darfst	kannst	magst	mußt	sollst	willst
er darf –	kann –	mag –	muß –	soll –	will –
wir dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ich dürfe	könne	möge	müssse	solle	wolle
du dürfst	könnest	mögest	müssst	sollst	wollst
er dürfe	könne	möge	müssse	solle	wolle
wir dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

IMPERATIVE WANTING, EXCEPT

wolle
wollt
wollen Sie

PAST INDICATIVE

ich durfte	könnte	mochte	mußte	sollte	wollte
du durfst	könnest	möchtest	müßtest	solltest	wolltest, etc.

PAST SUBJUNCTIVE

ich dürfte	könnte	mochte	mußte	sollte	wollte
du dürfst	könnest	möchtest	müßtest	solltest	wolltest, etc.

PARTICIPLES

dürfend	gedürft	könndend	gekönnt
mögend	gemocht	müssend	gemüßt
sollend	gesollt	wollend	gewollt

INFINITIVES

dürfen	gedurft haben	können	gekonnt haben
mögen	gemocht haben	müssen	gemüßt haben
sollen	gesollt haben	wollen	gewollt haben

COMPOUND TENSES OF wollen:

er hat	er hat
er habe	er habe
er hatte	er hatte
er hätte	er hätte
er wird	er wird
er werde	er werde
er würde	er würde
er wird	er wird
er werde	er werde
er würde	er würde

gewollt	gehēn wollen
wollen	gehēn wollen
gewollt haben	gehēn gehen wollen

228. Force of the Modal Auxiliaries: The modal auxiliaries are very idiomatic in their use, and must be learned largely by observation. The following table will explain the force of each, from which many meanings can be developed, as can be seen from the list of examples appended:

dürfen, *authority or permission.*

können, *ability or possibility.*

mögen, *inclination, likeliness, or concession.*

müssen, *necessity.*

sollen, *the will, intention, or claim of some one not the subject;*
hence often obligation or hearsay.

wollen, *the will, intention, or claim of the subject.*

229. Examples:

dürfen: Ich darf gehen, *I may (have permission to) go.*

Es darf sein, *It may be (there is authority for).*

Wir dürfen nicht gehen (with negative), *We must not go.*

können : Wir können es nicht tun, *We cannot do it.*

Es kann sein, *It may be* (mere possibility).

Ein Bettler kann, nach dem Sprichwort, nie verirren, according to the proverb, a beggar can never (*it is impossible ever to go astray.*)

mögen : Ich mag nicht gehen, *I do not care to go.*

Es mag sein, *It may be* (there is likeliness).

müssen : Sie mussten lange warten, *They had* (*it was necessary*) to wait a long time.

sollen : Sie sollen nicht gehen, *They shall not go* (my intention).

Du sollst nicht töten, *Thou shalt not kill* (God's will — your obligation).

Er soll ihn gestern gesehen haben, *He is said to have seen him yesterday* (some one's claim).

wollen : Er will es mir geben, *He is willing to give it to me.*

Ich will es selber tun, *I will* (*intend to*) do it myself.

Er wollte eben gehen, *He was about* (*intended just*) to go.

Sie wollen ihn nicht gesehen haben, *They claim not to have seen him.*

Wissen

230. *Wissen*, *know*, has many of the peculiarities of the modal auxiliaries. It is conjugated as follows :

PRESENT

Indicative

Subjunctive

Imperative

ich weiß -

ich wisse

du weißt

du wiss est

wisse

er weiß -

er wisse

wir wissen

wir wissen

ihr wisst

ihr wiss et

wisst

sie wissen

sie wiss en

wissen Sie

PAST

Indicative

ich wußte
du wußtest
er wußte
wir wußten
ihr wußtet
sie wußten

Subjunctive

wüßte
wüßtest
wüßte
wüßten
wüßtet
wüßten

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

Present

wissend

wissen

Perfect

gewußt

gewußt haben

THE COMPOUND TENSES ARE REGULAR.

DRILL XXVII

Conjugate the simple tenses of —

brennen, dürfen, kennen, können, mögen, müssen, nennen,
wissen.

Give a synopsis of —

auffallen, <i>surprise</i>	kriechen, <i>creep</i>	finnen, <i>think</i>
ausgleichen, <i>equalize</i>	meiden, <i>avoid</i>	stehlen, <i>steal</i>
bergen, <i>hide</i>	schaffen, <i>create</i>	vertreiben, <i>expel</i>
erraten, <i>guess</i>	schleifen, <i>whet</i>	waschen, <i>wash</i>
helfen, <i>help</i>	schweigen, <i>be silent</i>	wollen, <i>will</i>

EXERCISE XXVII

An meinen Johannes

Lieber Johannes!

Gold und Silber habe ich nicht; was ich aber habe, gebe ich Dir.

Die Zeit kommt heran, daß ich den Weg gehen muß, den man nicht wieder kommt. Ich kann Dich nicht mitnehmen, und lasse Dich in einer Welt zurück, wo guter Rat nicht überflüssig ist. Niemand

ist weise von Geburt an; Zeit und Erfahrung lehren hier. Ich habe die Welt länger gesehen, als Du. Es ist nicht alles Gold, lieber Sohn, was glänzt, und ich habe manchen Stern vom Himmel fallen und manchen Stab, auf den man sich verließ, brechen sehen. Darum will ich Dir einigen Rat geben, und Dir sagen, was ich gefunden habe, und was die Zeit mich gelehret hat.

Es ist nichts groß, was nicht gut ist, und ist nichts wahr, was nicht besteht.

Der Mensch ist nicht hier zu Hause, und er geht nicht von ungefähr in dem schlechten Rock umher. Er ist sich selbst anvertraut, und trägt sein Leben in seiner Hand. Und es ist nicht für ihn gleichgültig, ob er rechts oder links gehe.

Halte Dich zu gut, Böses zu tun. Hänge Dein Herz an kein vergängliches Ding. Die Wahrheit richtet sich nicht nach uns, lieber Sohn, sondern wir müssen uns nach ihr richten.

Was einer nicht hat, das kann er auch nicht geben. Und der ist nicht frei, der will tun können, was er will; sondern der ist frei, der wollen kann, was er tun soll. Und der ist nicht weise, der denkt, daß er wisse.

Es ist leicht zu verachten; verstehen ist viel besser. Lehre nicht andere, bis Du selber gelehrt bist. Wolle nur einerlei, und das wolle von Herzen. Sage nicht alles, was Du weißt; aber wisse immer, was Du sagst. Siehe nicht, wo die Spötter sitzen; denn sie sind die elendsten unter allen Kreaturen.

Wenn ich gestorben bin, so drücke mir die Augen zu, und beweine mich nicht.

Dein treuer Vater.

I must not go. I do not like to go. I ought to go. He is said to have money. He may go home. She would not do it. She would do it, if she could. He maintains that he saw him. I am not able to see. Do you know where he is? I cannot tell you. He ought to be here. Thou shalt not steal. You will see. We shall leave you. I will not come. He does not

care to go. It may be. She must come home; she is not allowed to stay so long. You might have done it, if you had tried. What will you do for me? That will do; you may go, my child. Where am I to go? You can do everything that you want to do. I should like to help you. He may be there. I had to remain at home. She is not willing to see you. These books are said to be very old. We saw that he had not been able to do it. She said that he would not let her drive alone. I think that I should have done it, but I did not like to. You could have done everything that you would have wanted to do. You might have done this, too, if you had cared to do it. I should have told him, if I could have seen him.

In the house he found an older man who was sitting at the table and was eating. He said to him, "May I remain over night with you?" But the old father also replied, "I am not the father of the house," and sent him to his father, who did likewise (the same), until he had asked seven men, each older than the last. And the seventh man, who was so old that he could hardly speak, said, "Yes, my son, you may."

THE REFLEXIVE VERB

231. The reflexive verb expresses an action which is performed by the subject upon itself. The object is always the reflexive pronoun of the same person (189), which occupies in the sentence the regular position of the pronoun object (88): *Sich setze mich*, *I seat myself*; *Sich werde mich sogleich setzen*, *I shall seat myself at once*. The auxiliary in perfect tenses is *haben* (214): *Sich habe mich gesetzt*, *I seated myself*.

232. The reflexive object is generally in the accusative case. Rarely it is in the genitive (242, c), and with the following verbs it is in the dative:

<i>sich aneignen, make one's own</i>	<i>sich schmeicheln, flatter one's self</i>
<i>sich anmaßen, assume</i>	<i>sich verschaffen, obtain</i>
<i>sich ausbitten, request</i>	<i>sich vornehmen, purpose</i>
<i>sich einbilben, imagine</i>	<i>sich vorstellen, imagine</i>
<i>sich getrauen, venture</i>	<i>sich zuziehen, bring upon one's self</i>

233. Reflexive verbs are intransitive. In English almost any transitive verb may be used intransitively also, but in German this is rare; however, a transitive verb may be made intransitive by using it reflexively: *Sich habe meinen kleinen Bruder verborgen*, *but I shall not hide*.

234. Paradigms:

a. Present tense of sich legen, lie down (lay one's self):

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
<i>ich lege mich</i>	<i>ich lege mich</i>	
<i>du legst dich</i>	<i>du legeſt dich</i>	<i>lege dich</i>
<i>er legt sich</i>	<i>er lege sich</i>	
<i>wir legen uns</i>	<i>wir legen uns</i>	
<i>ihr legt euch</i>	<i>ihr leget euch</i>	<i>legt euch</i>
<i>sie legen sich</i>	<i>sie legen sich</i>	<i>legen Sie sich</i>

b. Synopsis of *sich fürchten*, *be afraid*, *fürchtete sich*, *gefürchtet*:

SIMPLE FORMS

er fürchtet sich	fürchte dich
er fürchte sich	fürchtet euch
er fürchtete sich	fürchten Sie sich
er fürchtete sich	

PERFECT TENSES

er hat	sich gefürchtet	sich fürchtend	gefürchtet
er habe		sich fürchten	sich gefürchtet haben
er hatte			
er hätte			

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

er wird	sich fürchten	er wird	sich gefürchtet haben
er werde		er werde	
er würde		er würde	

FUTURE TENSES

DRILL XXVIII

Conjugate the simple tenses of —

Strong: *sich besinnen*, *sich enthalten*, *sich heben*, *sich schleichen*, *sich unterfangen*, *sich verbergen*, *sich versehen*, *sich (dat.) vornehmen*, *sich waschen*.

Weak: *sich bemächtigen*, *sich eilen*, *sich einbilden*, *sich entledigen*, *sich erinnern*, *sich fortmachen*, *sich freuen*, *sich säumen*, *sich weigern*.

Give a synopsis of —

Strong: *sich annehmen*, *sich betragen*, *sich ergeben*, *sich schlagen*, *sich verlassen*, *sich vermessen*.

Weak: *sich ärgern*, *sich bedienen*, *sich bemühen*, *sich denken*, *sich erholen*, *sich fügen*, *sich niederlegen*, *sich rühmen*, *sich schämen*, *sich sehnen*.

EXERCISE XXVIII

Der alte Großvater

Es war einmal ein sehr alter Mann. Wenn er nun bei Tische saß, und den Löffel kaum halten konnte, schüttete er oft Suppe auf das Tischtuch. Sein Sohn und dessen Frau mochten das nicht leiden, und deswegen mußte sich der alte Großvater endlich hinter den Ofen setzen, und sie gaben ihm sein Essen in ein irdenes Schüsselchen und noch nicht einmal genug. Einmal konnten auch seine zitternden Hände das Schüsselchen nicht festhalten; es fiel zur Erde und zerbrach. Da kauften sie ihm ein hölzernes Schüsselchen für ein paar Pfennig; daraus mußte er nun essen. Wie sie so da sitzen, so trägt der kleine Enkel von vier Jahren allerlei kleine Brettlein zusammen. „Was machst du da?“ fragte der Vater. „Ich mache ein Schüsselchen,“ antwortet das Kind, „daraus sollen Vater und Mutter essen, wenn ich groß bin.“

I am very glad; be ye glad; how do you feel to-day? He would have been glad, if you had arrived; we did not remember; do not flatter thyself; why are you afraid? That happens often; once upon a time it happened; I shall depend upon you; do not be afraid; I shall not flatter myself; that was not proper; she will not be afraid; that is a matter of course.

An officer who could not swim fell into the water. A soldier who was standing near saw the officer fall into the water, jumped in, and pulled him out. The officer thanked the soldier and gave him something. Another soldier who had seen this asked, “How much did he give you?” The soldier opened his hand and found a penny in it. His friend said, “Well, the officer knows best how much his life is worth.”

THE PASSIVE VOICE

235. The passive voice is formed by using with the perfect participle of the verb the proper form of the auxiliary *werden*, with the following irregularities :

- a. The perfect participle of *werden* omits its prefix *ge*, becoming *worben* (169).
- b. The imperative is formed with the auxiliary *sein* instead of *werden*: *sei geliebt, seid geliebt, be loved.*
- c. The present participle is formed with *zu* and the active present participle (168 and 269), and is used only adjectively: *zu liebend, to be loved.*
- d. What is commonly given as the active perfect participle (168) of a transitive verb is really passive in force and serves as such; such forms as *geliebt worden* are never found independently.

236. Since the object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, only transitive verbs may have a passive voice. The subject of the active becomes the agent of the passive, which is generally expressed by *von*: (active) *Ich öffne die Tür, I open the door;* (passive) *Die Tür wird von mir geöffnet, The door is opened by me.*

1. The indirect agent or the means employed is expressed by *durch*: *Der Brief wurde durch einen Boten geschickt, The letter was sent by a messenger.* The instrument is expressed by *mit*: *Mit diesem Hammer wurde er erschlagen, With this hammer was he killed.*

2. A dative case of the active remains dative in the passive. Hence verbs which take only a dative object (243, a, 1), and have no accusative in the active to become subject of the passive, are used impersonally in the passive: *Meine besten Freunde raten mir, My best friends advise me;* *Mir wird (es wird mir) von meinen besten Freunden geraten, I am advised by my best friends.*

3. Similarly is formed an impersonal passive of intransitive verbs of motion: *heute Abend wird getanzt, There will be dancing this evening.*

4. The predicate accusative (244, d) of the active voice becomes a predicate nominative in the passive (241, b, 2): *Wir nennen ihn Herrn, We call him master; Er wird von uns Herr genannt, He is called master by us.*

237. There is a tendency in German to avoid the passive forms, especially when the agent is not expressed; for them are substituted—

- a. *Man* with an active verb: *Man sagt, It is said (one says).*
- b. A reflexive verb: *Solch ein Geist jagt sich so leicht nicht fort, Such a spirit is not so easily driven away.*

1. An apparent passive is also formed by the auxiliary *sein*, the difference being that the form with *werden* denotes passive action, the force of the perfect participle being verbal; while the form with *sein* denotes passive condition or state, the force of the participle being adjectival: *Der Brief wird geschrieben, The letter is (being) written; Der Brief ist geschrieben, The letter is (as the result of previous action) written.*

238. Synopsis, in the passive voice, of *sehen*, see:

PRINCIPAL PARTS *gesehen werden* *wurde gesehen* *gesehen*

SIMPLE FORMS

<i>er wird</i>	}	<i>sei</i>	}	<i>gesehen</i>
<i>er werde</i>		<i>seid</i>		<i>gesehen</i>
<i>er wurde</i>		<i>seien</i>		<i>gesehen</i>
<i>er würde</i>		<i>Sie</i>		

PERFECT TENSES

<i>er ist</i>	}	<i>zu sehend</i>	<i>gesehen</i>
<i>er sei</i>		<i>gesehen werden</i>	<i>gesehen worden sein</i>
<i>er war</i>		<i>gesehen worden</i>	
<i>er wäre</i>			

PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES

<i>er wird</i>	}	<i>er wird</i>	}	<i>gesehen</i>
<i>er werde</i>		<i>er werde</i>		<i>gesehen werden</i>
<i>er würde</i>		<i>er würde</i>		<i>gesehen worden sein</i>

FUTURE TENSES

DRILL XXX

Give a synopsis in the passive voice of —

Strong: bersten, fangen, geben, laden, messen, reißen, schelten, trinken, zwingen.

Weak: bringen, führen, holen, kaufen, kennen, lieben, machen, nennen, stellen.

Convert into passive constructions —

Wir haben heute einen Mann gesehen. Der Vater wird seinen Sohn Johann nennen. Wir heißen ihn König. Herr Schmidt hatte nur einen Fisch gefangen. Seine Schwester gibt ihm diesmal nichts. Sie hat ihm nicht geantwortet. Wer hat mich gerufen? Er hat meinem Vater ein Buch gekauft. Der Mann wird seinem Bruder nicht helfen. Ich habe einen großen Vogel in diesem Baume gesehen. Die Mutter wird dem Kinde den Hund nehmen, wenn es ihn nicht besser behandelt.

EXERCISE XXIX

Das gestohlene Pferd

Einem Bauer wurde bei Nacht sein schönstes Pferd aus dem Stalle gestohlen. Er reiste auf einen weit entfernten Pferdemarkt, um ein anderes zu kaufen. Aber, siehe da! unter den Pferden erblickte er auch das seinige. Sogleich ergriff er es am Bügel und sagte: „Das Pferd gehört mir; vor drei Tagen ist es mir gestohlen worden!“ Der Mann, der das Pferd hatte, sagte: „Da seid Ihr in einem Irrtum, lieber Freund. Ich habe das Pferd schon über ein Jahr.“ Schnell hielt der Landmann dem Pferde mit beiden Händen die Augen zu und rief: „Nun, so sagt doch, an welchem Auge er blind ist.“ Der Fremde, von dem das Pferd wirklich gestohlen aber noch nicht so genau betrachtet worden war, sagte auf Geratewohl: „Auf dem linken Auge.“ „Nein!“ versetzte der Bauer. „Ah,“ sagte der Fremde, „ich habe mich versprochen; auf dem rechten Auge ist er

blind!" „Oho!" rief der Bauer, „jetzt ist es klar, daß du ein Dieb bist, denn das Pferd ist gar nicht blind.“ Der Pferdedieb wurde sogleich festgenommen und zur verdienten Strafe gezogen.

It is said; he has not been seen by any one; they shall be found; my hands are tied; my horse was stolen last night; help! my horse is stolen; has the thief been caught? yes, he was caught by me; a horse has been stolen, but by whom? a good man is always trusted; we are served well; the man was seen by no one. The horse would not have been taken if the stable had been locked. When I came in, her eyes were closed.

A farmer had seven sons, who often quarreled with each other. One day the sons were called together, and seven sticks, which were bound together, were placed before them. "Break these sticks," said the father. Each tried, but none succeeded. "Nothing is easier," said the father, as he untied the sticks, and broke one after the other. Then said the father, "So will it go with you, if you do not hold together."

PART TWO

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

239. The principal uses of the definite article (28) are —

- a.* The Demonstrative, to point out an object as specific or well known : *Die Sonne geht um sechs Uhr auf, The sun rises at six o'clock.*
- b.* The Generic, to denote a class or species : *Das Blei ist schwer, Lead is heavy.*
- c.* The Possessive, to replace a possessive adjective when the possessor is evident from the context : *Er hat den Arm gebrochen, He has broken his arm.*
- d.* The Distributive, in expressions of cost, etc. : *zehn Pfennig das Pfund, ten pfennigs a pound; zweimal die Woche, twice a week.*
- e.* Before proper nouns when qualified, or to distinguish case ; to show that a person is well known ; and in familiar use : *der alte Wilhelm, old William; dem Schiller, to Schiller; Kennst du den Faust? Do you know Faust? Wo ist der Karl? Where is Charles?*
- f.* Before the names of seasons, months, days, and streets : *der Frühling, spring; der Dezember, December; der Donnerstag, Thursday; die Hochstraße, High Street.*

240. The noun without an article expresses an indefinite number or a part : *In diesem Walde sieht man nichts als Eichen, In this forest one sees nothing but oaks; Dort kaufsten wir Brot für die Kinder, There we bought (some) bread for the children.*

THE CASES

241. The Nominative: The nominative case is used to express —

a. The subject of a verb : *Der Mann kommt, The man is coming.*

b. The predicate after —

1. The neuter verbs *bleiben, scheinen, sein, and werden*, which do not express action but a state of being : *Er ist mein Sohn, He is my son. Er scheint ein großer Prinz, He seems a great prince.*

2. Passive verbs which in the active voice take two accusatives (244, *d*), and *heißen* with passive force : *Er wird König genannt, He is called king.*

c. Direct address : *Lebt wohl, ihr Matten ! (Sch.) Farewell, ye meadows !*

d. Exclamation : *O der Spießbube ! O the rascal !*

242. The Genitive: The genitive limits or completes the meaning of a noun, adjective, verb, or preposition. Its principal uses are —

a. The adnominal genitive, or genitive complement of a noun, which may be divided as follows :

1. Descriptive genitive, defining or limiting the meaning of a noun, showing a general connection : *die Milch der frommen Denkart, the milk of human kindness.*

2. Possessive genitive, denoting ownership, authorship, or source : *meines Vaters Haus, my father's house; die Früchte des Baumes, the fruits of the tree.*

3. Subjective genitive, used with verbal nouns to show the subject of the verbal idea contained in the noun : *die Liebe einer Mutter, a mother's love.*
4. Objective genitive, used with verbal nouns to show the object of the verbal idea contained in the noun : *die Liebe des Vaterlandes, love for one's country.*
5. Partitive genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken : *eine Flasche roten Weines, a bottle of red wine.*

b. The predicate genitive : *Sei guter Dinge, Be of good cheer.*

c. Genitive object of a verb :

1. As primary object of such verbs as the following, most of which may, however, in modern German take another construction :

achten, <i>heed</i>	gewähren, <i>perceive</i>
bedürfen, <i>need</i>	harren, <i>wait for</i>
begehrēn, <i>desire</i>	mangeln, <i>lack</i>
brauchen, <i>need</i>	schonen, <i>spare</i>
denken, <i>think of</i>	spotten, <i>mock</i>
entbehren, <i>be without</i>	vergessen, <i>forget</i>
gedenken, <i>think of</i>	warten, <i>wait for</i>

2. As secondary object of —

i. Verbs of accusing, acquitting, condemning, etc., such as —

anklagen, <i>accuse</i>	überführen, <i>convict</i>
belehren, <i>inform</i>	überzeugen, <i>convince</i>
beschuldigen, <i>accuse</i>	verklagen, <i>accuse</i>
freisprechen, <i>acquit</i>	würdigen, <i>deem worthy</i>
mahnēn, <i>warn</i>	zeihen, <i>accuse</i>

ii. Many reflexive verbs, such as —

<i>sich annehmen, take interest in</i>	<i>sich erbarmen, pity</i>
<i>sich bedienen, make use of</i>	<i>sich erfreuen, enjoy</i>
<i>sich bemächtigen, take possession of</i>	<i>sich erinnern, remember</i>
	<i>sich rühmen, boast of</i>
	<i>sich schämen, be ashamed of</i>

iii. Privative verbs, denoting separation, deprivation, etc.

<i>berauben, rob</i>	<i>entlassen, discharge</i>
<i>entbinden, release</i>	<i>entledigen, deliver</i>
<i>entkleiden, divest</i>	<i>entsezzen, dismiss</i>
<i>entladen, disburden</i>	<i>verjagen, drive away</i>

iv. Certain impersonal verbs :

<i>es dauert mich, I pity</i>	<i>es jammert mich, I pity</i>
<i>es ekelt mich, I loathe</i>	<i>es lohnt sich, it is worth</i>
<i>es erbarmt mich, I pity</i>	<i>es reut mich, I regret</i>
<i>es gelüstet mich, I desire</i>	<i>es verbrießt mich, I am vexed</i>

d. Genitive complementary to adjectives denoting fullness, power, knowledge, etc., such as —

<i>ansichtig, in sight</i>	<i>fundig, acquainted</i>
<i>bedürftig, in need</i>	<i>ledig, free</i>
<i>bewußt, conscious</i>	<i>leer, empty</i>
<i>erfahren, experienced</i>	<i>los, rid</i>
<i>fähig, capable</i>	<i>mächtig, master of</i>
<i>frei, free</i>	<i>müde, tired</i>
<i>froh, glad</i>	<i>satt, sated</i>
<i>gedenk, mindful</i>	<i>sicher, sure</i>
<i>gewahr, aware</i>	<i>voll, full</i>
<i>gewiß, sure</i>	<i>wert, worth</i>
<i>habhaft, in possession of</i>	<i>würdig, worthy</i>

e. Adverbial genitive, expressing —

1. Indefinite time, or the time of an action that is repeated or customary: *Eines Tages kam er, One day he came; Tages Arbeit, Abends Gäste, sei dein fünfzig Baubertwort, Work by day, and in the evening guests, be your watchword in the future.*
2. Place: *Sezt gehe jeder seines Weges (Sch.), Now let every one go his way.*
3. Manner: *Nach Uri fahr' ich stehnden Fußes (Sch.), I am going to Uri without delay (just as I am).*

f. Genitive after prepositions: (an)statt, *instead of*, trotz, *in spite of*, um . . . willen, *for the sake of*, während, *during*, wegen, *on account of*, etc.

243. The Dative: The dative denotes the person toward whom, or the thing toward which, the action of the verb is directed without affecting it immediately. Its principal uses are —

a. As primary object of —

1. Verbs denoting nearness, likeness, service, appurtenance, concurrence, inclination, etc., and their opposites, such as —

antworten, *answer*
begegnen, *meet*
beistehen, *help*
danken, *thank*
dienen, *serve*
folgen, *follow, obey*
gefallen, *please*
gehören, *belong to*
gehörchen, *obey*

gelingen, *succeed*
geschehen, *happen*
glauben, *believe*
gleichen, *resemble*
helfen, *help*
nähen, *approach*
raten, *advise*
schaden, *harm*
trauen, *trust*

2. Certain impersonal verbs, such as —

es ahnt mir, <i>I have a pre-sentiment</i>	es beliebt mir, <i>it pleases me</i>
es bangt mir, <i>I am afraid</i>	es schmeckt mir, <i>I relish</i>
	es schwindelt mir, <i>I am dizzy</i>
	es ziemt mir, <i>it becomes me</i>

b. As secondary or indirect object after verbs of giving, taking, showing, and communicating, which have also a direct object : Er gab mir den Hut, aber er nahm mir den Rock, *He gave me the hat, but took the coat from me.*

c. Dative of interest, showing the person for whose advantage or disadvantage a thing is done : Wann wird der Retter kommen diesem Lande ? (Sch.) *When will a savior come for this land?*

d. Ethical dative, often untranslatable, and confined to pronouns of the first and second persons, to show the personal interest of the speaker or the person addressed in the action : Mein Kaiser, warum bist du mir gestorben ? *My emperor, why did you have to die?*

e. The dative after adjectives, especially such as are related to verbs which are followed by the dative, denoting nearness, likeness, fitness, service, acquaintance, appurtenance, advantage, inclination, and their opposites, such as —

angenehm, <i>pleasant</i>	gut, <i>well disposed</i>
bekannt, <i>known</i>	lieb, <i>dear</i>
fern, <i>distant</i>	nah(e), <i>near</i>
fremd, <i>strange</i>	nützlich, <i>useful</i>
freundlich, <i>friendly</i>	teuer, <i>dear</i>
gemein, <i>common</i>	treu, <i>faithful</i>
gleich, <i>like</i>	untertänig, <i>subject to</i>
günstig, <i>favorable</i>	willkommen, <i>welcome</i>

f. The dative after prepositions, for which see 35 and 44.

244. The Accusative: The accusative generally denotes the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb. Its principal uses are—

a. Direct object of a transitive verb: *Sch halte das Pferd*, *I am holding the horse.*

b. Cognate accusative, the noun merely repeating the idea of an intransitive verb of similar meaning: *Gar schöne Spiele spel' ich mit dir* (G.), *Very pretty games will I play with you.*

c. Double accusative. Some verbs regularly govern two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing. They are—

1. *lehren*: *Lehre mich die wahre Weisheit* (L.), *Teach me true wisdom.*

2. *bitten*, *fragen*, and *überreden*, when the accusative of the thing is a neuter pronoun: *Laß mich dich noch etwas fragen*, *Let me ask you one thing more.*

d. Predicate accusative, in addition to a direct object, after *heßen*, *nennen*, *schelten*, *schimpfen*, *schmähen*, *taufen*: *Wir nennen ihn unseren König*, *We call him our king.*

e. After certain impersonal verbs:

es ärgert mich, *I am vexed*

es dauert mich, *I am sorry*

es dürftet mich, *I am thirsty*

es freut mich, *it pleases me*

es friert mich, *I am cold*

es hungert mich, *I am hungry*

es jammert mich, *it grieves me*

es schlafert mich, *I am sleepy*

es verbrießt mich, *it vexes me*

es wundert mich, *it surprises me*

f. After certain adjectives, which more regularly take the genitive (242, d):

ansichtig, *in sight*

gewahr, *aware*

habhaft, *in possession*

los, *rid*

fatt, *sated*

wett, *worth*

g. Adverbial accusative, expressing —

1. The way: *Fort!* Wandle deine fürchterliche Straße!
(Sch.) *Begone!* *Travel thy fearful path!*
2. Measure of time, space, weight, or cost: *Es kostet zehn Mark*, *It costs ten marks*; *Ich war kaum hundert Schritte gegangen*, *I had gone scarcely a hundred paces*.
3. Definite time: *Diese Nacht noch muß er fort*, *He must be off this very night*.

h. Accusative absolute, depending apparently on some such verb-form as *habend* or *haltend*: *Ich eile fort, vor mir den Tag, hinter mir die Nacht* (G.), *I hasten away, before me the day, behind me the night*.

i. Accusative after prepositions, for which see **35** and **45**.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

245. First Class (47): To this class belong also —

- a. Three masculines in em: *Atem, breath, Brodem, vapor, Odem, breath.*
- b. *Der Käse, the cheese.*
- c. Ten masculines in e not denoting animate objects, and the neuter *Herz*, which really have stems in en but for the most part lack the n (*Herz* the en) in the nominative singular, retaining it elsewhere (except *Herz*, which, being neuter, must have its accusative and nominative singular alike). They are —

<i>Friede(n), peace</i>	<i>Glaube, belief</i>	<i>Schade(n), damage</i>
<i>Funke(n), spark</i>	<i>Haufe, heap</i>	<i>Wille, will</i>
<i>Gedanke, thought</i>	<i>Name, name</i>	
<i>Gefalle(n), favor</i>	<i>Same, seed</i>	<i>Herz, heart</i>

1. *Schade(n)* umlauts in the plural. The three masculines in m do not add n in the dative plural (41). *Der Buchstabe* sometimes forms the genitive des *Buchstabens*, and so also is found an old genitive *Schmerzens* from *der Schmerz*.

246. Declension of der Glaube, the belief, and das Herz, the heart:

Sing. N.	<i>der Glaube</i> —	<i>das Herz</i> —
G.	<i>des Glaubens</i> —	<i>des Herzens</i> —
D.	<i>dem Glauben</i> —	<i>dem Herzen</i> —
A.	<i>den Glauben</i> —	<i>das Herz</i> —
Plur. N.	<i>die Glauben</i> —	<i>die Herzen</i> —
G.	<i>der Glauben</i> —	<i>der Herzen</i> —
D.	<i>den Glauben</i> —	<i>den Herzen</i> —
A.	<i>die Glauben</i> —	<i>die Herzen</i> —

247. Second Class (54): The umlautable masculine monosyllables which do not add the umlaut in the plural are —

<i>Aal, eel</i>	<i>Huf, hoof</i>	<i>Quarz, quartz</i>
<i>Aar, eagle</i>	<i>Hund, dog</i>	<i>Quast, tassel</i>
<i>Arm, arm</i>	<i>Kran, crane</i>	<i>Rost, grate</i>
<i>Bord, border</i>	<i>Lachs, salmon</i>	<i>Ruf, call</i>
<i>Docht, wick</i>	<i>Laut, sound</i>	<i>Schall, sound</i>
<i>Dolch, dagger</i>	<i>Luchs, lynx</i>	<i>Schuft, scoundrel</i>
<i>Dom, dome</i>	<i>Lump, wretch</i>	<i>Schuh, shoe</i>
<i>Forst, forest</i>	<i>Molch, salamander</i>	<i>Spalt, split</i>
<i>Fund, find</i>	<i>Mond, moon</i>	<i>Star, starling</i>
<i>Gau, district</i>	<i>Most, fruit-juice</i>	<i>Stoff, material</i>
<i>Grad, degree</i>	<i>Ort, place</i>	<i>Strauß, ostrich</i>
<i>Gurt, girth</i>	<i>Pfad, path</i>	<i>Strolch, tramp</i>
<i>Hag, hedge</i>	<i>Pfuhl, pool</i>	<i>Tag, day</i>
<i>Hall, sound</i>	<i>Pol, pole</i>	<i>Takt, measure</i>
<i>Halm, stalk</i>	<i>Puls, pulse</i>	<i>Thron, throne</i>
<i>Hauch, breath</i>	<i>Punkt, point</i>	<i>Tusch, flourish</i>

248. The umlautable feminine monosyllables of this class are —

<i>Angst, anxiety</i>	<i>Hand, hand</i>	<i>Nacht, night</i>
<i>Art, ax</i>	<i>Haut, skin</i>	<i>Naht, seam</i>
<i>Bank, bench</i>	<i>Kluft, cleft</i>	<i>Not, need</i>
<i>Braut, bride</i>	<i>Kraft, force</i>	<i>Nuß, nut</i>
<i>Brunst, conflagration</i>	<i>Kuh, cow</i>	<i>Sau, sow</i>
<i>Brust, breast</i>	<i>Kunst, art</i>	<i>Schnur, string</i>
<i>Faust, fist</i>	<i>Laus, louse</i>	<i>Schwulst, swelling</i>
<i>Flucht, flight</i>	<i>Luft, air</i>	<i>Stadt, town</i>
<i>Frucht, fruit</i>	<i>Lust, pleasure</i>	<i>Wand, wall</i>
<i>Gans, goose</i>	<i>Macht, might</i>	<i>Wurst, sausage</i>
<i>Gruft, vault</i>	<i>Magd, maid</i>	<i>Zucht, breeding</i>
<i>Gunst, favor</i>	<i>Maus, mouse</i>	<i>Zunft, guild</i>

249. Neuter monosyllables are difficult to classify, since there is no apparent basis of classification. They are divided almost equally between the second and the third class, with a majority of the more frequently used in Class III. Those in the second class are—

Beet, bed	Kreuz, cross	Röhr, cane
Beil, hatchet	Los, lot	Roß, horse
Bein, bone	Mahl, meal	Salz, salt
Bier, beer	Mal, time	Schaf, sheep
Boot, boat	Maß, measure	Schiff, ship
Brot, bread	Meer, sea	Schrot, cut
Erz, ore	Moor, moor	Schwein, hog
Fell, hide	Moos, moss	Seil, rope
Fest, feast	Netz, net	Sieb, sieve
Gas, gas	Öhr, eyelet	Spiel, play
Gift, poison	Öl, oil	Stück, piece
Haar, hair	Paar, pair	Tau, cord
Harz, resin	Pferd, horse	Tier, animal
Heer, army	Pfund, pound	Tor, gate
Heft, fast	Pult, desk	Bließ, fleece
Jahr, year	Recht, right	Werk, work
Joch, yoke	Reh, roe	Zelt, tent
Kinn, chin	Reich, realm	Zeug, stuff
Knie, knee	Riff, reef	Ziel, goal

250. Third Class (68): This class includes the masculines *Bösewicht* and *Wormund*.

251. The unclassifiable neuter polysyllables in the third class are—

Gemach, room	Gesicht, face	Hospital, hospital
Gemüt, mind	Gespenst, specter	Regiment, regiment
Geschlecht, race	Gewand, garment	

252. The neuter monosyllables in the third class are —

<i>Aas, carrion</i>	<i>Glied, limb</i>	<i>Licht, light</i>
<i>Amt, office</i>	<i>Grab, grave</i>	<i>Lied, song</i>
<i>Bad, bath</i>	<i>Gras, grass</i>	<i>Loch, hole</i>
<i>Band, ribbon</i>	<i>Gut, good</i>	<i>Maul, mouth</i>
<i>Bild, picture</i>	<i>Haupt, head</i>	<i>Nest, nest</i>
<i>Blatt, leaf</i>	<i>Haus, house</i>	<i>Pfand, pledge</i>
<i>Brett, board</i>	<i>Holz, wood</i>	<i>Rad, wheel</i>
<i>Buch, book</i>	<i>Horn, horn</i>	<i>Reis, twig</i>
<i>Dach, roof</i>	<i>Huhn, hen</i>	<i>Rind, head of cattle</i>
<i>Dorf, village</i>	<i>Kalb, calf</i>	<i>Schloß, castle</i>
<i>Ei, egg</i>	<i>Kind, child</i>	<i>Schwert, sword</i>
<i>Fach, compartment</i>	<i>Kleid, dress</i>	<i>Tal, valley</i>
<i>Faß, vat</i>	<i>Korn, corn</i>	<i>Tuch, cloth</i>
<i>Feld, field</i>	<i>Kraut, herb</i>	<i>Volk, people</i>
<i>Geld, money</i>	<i>Lamm, lamb</i>	<i>Weib, woman</i>
<i>Glas, glass</i>	<i>Land, land</i>	<i>Wort, word</i>

253. The Weak Declension (75): The masculine monosyllables in the Weak Declension are —

<i>Bär, bear</i>	<i>Held, hero</i>	<i>Öchs, ox</i>
<i>Christ, Christian</i>	<i>Herr, master</i>	<i>Pfau, peacock</i>
<i>Fink, finch</i>	<i>Hirt, shepherd</i>	<i>Prinz, prince</i>
<i>Fürst, prince</i>	<i>Mensch, human being</i>	<i>Schent, cup-bearer</i>
<i>Geck, dandy</i>	<i>Möhr, Moor</i>	<i>Spatz, sparrow</i>
<i>Graf, count</i>	<i>Narr, fool</i>	<i>Tor, fool</i>

254. To the Weak Declension belong also the following masculines :

<i>Buchstabe, letter</i>	<i>Hagestolz, bachelor</i>	<i>Steinmeß, mason</i>
<i>Genoß, companion</i>	<i>*Nachbar, neighbor</i>	<i>*Untertan, subject</i>
<i>Gesell(e), companion</i>	<i>Schultheiß, mayor</i>	<i>Vorfahr, ancestor</i>

* Also mixed.

255. The feminine monosyllables in this declension are —

<i>Acht, heed</i>	<i>Jagd, chase</i>	<i>Schlucht, hollow</i>
<i>Alm, Alpine meadow</i>	<i>Kost, fare</i>	<i>Schmach, ignominy</i>
<i>Art, kind</i>	<i>Kur, cure</i>	<i>Schrift, writing</i>
<i>Bahn, way</i>	<i>Last, load</i>	<i>Schuld, debt</i>
<i>Bai, bay</i>	<i>List, artifice</i>	<i>Schur, shearing</i>
<i>Bark, bark</i>	<i>Mahd, mowing</i>	<i>See, sea</i>
<i>Brut, brood</i>	<i>Mark, mark</i>	<i>Sicht, sight</i>
<i>Bucht, bay</i>	<i>Marsch, marsh</i>	<i>Spreu, chaff</i>
<i>Burg, castle</i>	<i>Mast, fattening</i>	<i>Spur, track</i>
<i>Fahrt, journey</i>	<i>Maut, toll</i>	<i>Statt, place</i>
<i>Farm, farm</i>	<i>Milch, milk</i>	<i>Stirn, forehead</i>
<i>Fee, fairy</i>	<i>Milz, milt</i>	<i>Streu, litter</i>
<i>Flur, field</i>	<i>Null, zero</i>	<i>Sucht, disease</i>
<i>Flut, flood</i>	<i>Pacht, tenure</i>	<i>Tat, deed</i>
<i>Form, form</i>	<i>Pein, pain</i>	<i>Tour, turn</i>
<i>Fracht, freight</i>	<i>Pest, pest</i>	<i>Tracht, carriage</i>
<i>Frau, woman</i>	<i>Pflicht, duty</i>	<i>Trift, drift</i>
<i>Frift, space of time</i>	<i>Post, post</i>	<i>Tür, door</i>
<i>Front, front</i>	<i>Pracht, pomp</i>	<i>Uhr, clock</i>
<i>Furcht, fear</i>	<i>Qual, torment</i>	<i>Wahl, choice</i>
<i>Geiß, goat</i>	<i>Rast, rest</i>	<i>Wehr, defense</i>
<i>Gier, greed</i>	<i>Ruhr, flux</i>	<i>Welt, world</i>
<i>Glut, glow</i>	<i>Saat, sowing</i>	<i>Wucht, weight</i>
<i>Haft, detention</i>	<i>Schar, troop</i>	<i>Wut, rage</i>
<i>Haft, haste</i>	<i>Schau, view</i>	<i>Zahl, number</i>
<i>Huld, favor</i>	<i>Scheu, shyness</i>	<i>Zeit, time</i>
<i>Hut, guard</i>	<i>Schicht, layer</i>	<i>Zier, ornament</i>
<i>Jacht, yacht</i>	<i>Schlacht, battle</i>	

256. The **Mixed Declension** (85): The unclassifiable masculines in the Mixed Declension are—

Bauer, peasant	Nachbar, neighbor	Staat, state
Dorn, thorn	Nerv, nerve	Stachel, sting
Gevatter, godfather	Psalm, psalm	Strahl, ray
Konsul, consul	Schmerz, pain	Untertan, subject
Mast, mast	See, lake	Vetter, cousin
Muskel, muscle	Sporn, spur	Bins, interest

257. The unclassifiable neuters in the Mixed Declension are—

Auge, eye	Ende, end	Interesse, interest
Bett, bed	Hemd, shirt	Zumel, jewel
		Ohr, ear

THE ADJECTIVE

258. **Pronominal Adjectives** (102):

all, all, every, commonly uninflected before a pronominal adjective: all diese Männer, all these men; not used in the sense of whole, which is expressed by ganz: den ganzen Tag, all day; replaces jed- in the plural: alle Tage, every day.

jed-, each, every, no plural, see all; after ein it is declined like a descriptive adjective (109): ein jeder, eines jedes, etc.

manch, many (a), is less definite than viel; uninflected before ein, and often before a noun or adjective: manch (ein) schönes Kind, many a pretty child.

viel, much, many, and wenig, little, few, are generally uninflected in the singular: viel Wasser, much water.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

259. A descriptive adjective may be either strong or weak (109) after the nominative or accusative plural of all, ander-, beide, einig-, etlich-, manch-, mehrere, solch-, viel, welch-,

wenig: viele brave(n) Kinder, *many good children*; solche kleine(n) Häuser, *such small houses*.

260. An adjective is strong after the nominative or accusative singular of a personal pronoun; after other cases it is either strong or weak: Du armes Kind, dir armem (or armen) Kind, ihr arme(n) Kinder, *you poor child!* etc.

261. The pronominal adjective ein, ander, and the possessives (142) are declined weak when used with the definite article: der eine, der andere, *the one, the other*; der unsere, *ours*.

262. Adjectives, though used as nouns (substantively, 105), retain their adjective declension: ein Fremder (*fremd, strange*), der Fremde, eines Fremden, *a stranger*, etc.

263. All, ganz, and halb, when preceding a neuter name of place without an article, are not declined: ganz Deutschland, *all Germany*; halb Berlin, *half Berlin*.

264. From the names of places are formed by adding er (287) indeclinable proper adjectives, which are always capitalized (16, c, 1): die Berliner Eisenbahn, *the Berlin railway*.

265. Comparison: The following adjectives umlaut in comparison (116), those marked with an asterisk being found also without the umlaut:

alt, <i>old</i>	groß, <i>large</i>	nah, <i>near</i>
arg, <i>wicked</i>	hart, <i>hard</i>	*naß, <i>wet</i>
arm, <i>poor</i>	hoch, <i>high</i>	rot, <i>red</i>
*bang, <i>apprehensive</i>	jung, <i>young</i>	sharp, <i>sharp</i>
*blaß, <i>pale</i>	kalt, <i>cold</i>	*schmal, <i>narrow</i>
*dumm, <i>stupid</i>	klug, <i>clever</i>	schwach, <i>weak</i>
*fromm, <i>honest</i>	krank, <i>ill</i>	schwarz, <i>black</i>
*gefünd, <i>well</i>	*krumm, <i>crooked</i>	stark, <i>strong</i>
*glatt, <i>smooth</i>	kurz, <i>short</i>	warm, <i>warm</i>
grob, <i>coarse</i>	lang, <i>long</i>	zart, <i>tender</i>

THE VERB

266. List of Strong Verbs: The following list contains only such verbs as are usually strong. The Roman numeral refers to the ablaut class, as classified in 188, to which the verb belongs. Only the more usual and modern forms are given. Parentheses denote that the included letters may be omitted. Verbs marked (*) are also weak.

PRESENT	2D SING. PRESENT	PAST	PERFECT
Infinitive	Indicative	Subj.	Participle
<i>beden, bake</i>	I bäßt II beſchläſt III beſteß(e)t	bußt befahl befließt	blüte befühle beflüſſe
<i>befehlen, command</i>	IV beginnt III beiß(e)t	begann beißt	begonnen begönne
<i>befleißien, attend to</i>	II birgt II birft	barg barft	bürge, bürge bürſtſe
<i>beginnen, begin</i>	IV beginnt III beiß(e)t	begann beißt	begonnen begönne
<i>beißen, bite</i>	II birgt II birft	barg barft	bürge, bürge bürſtſe
<i>bergen, hide</i>	V bewegit	bewog	bewöge
<i>*berfen, burst</i>	V biegt	bieg(e)	böge
<i>bewegen, induce</i>	V biet(e)f	biet(e)	böte
<i>biegen, bend</i>	V bind(e)f	bind(e)	bönde
<i>bieten, offer</i>	IV bitt(e)f	bitt(e)	büte
<i>binden, bind</i>	II bitteſt	bitt(e)	büſtſe
<i>bitten, ask</i>	I blaß(e)t	blaßt(e)	büſtſe
<i>blaſen, blow</i>			

bleiben, <i>remain</i>	III	bleibst	bleib(e)	blieb	blied
braten, <i>roast</i>	I	brässt	brat(e)	brriet	briete
brechen, <i>break</i>	II	brichst	brich	bräfē	briäfe
*bringen, <i>hire</i>	IV	bringst	bring(e)	bang	bänge
breitgen, <i>thrash</i>	II	brifh(e)f	brifh	brifh, bröfch	bräfch, bröfch
bringen, <i>press</i>	IV	bringst	bring(e)	brang	bränge
empfehlen, <i>recommend</i>	II	empfehlst	empfehl	empföhli	empföhli
erbleidchen, <i>turn pale</i>	III	erbleidhst	erbleidh(e)	erblidh	erblidh
essen, <i>eat</i>	II	iss(e)t	iss	iß	iße
fahren, <i>go</i>	I	fährt	fahr(e)	fuhr	föhre
fallen, <i>fall</i>	I	fällst	fall(e)	fiel	fielle
fangen, <i>catch</i>	I	fängst	fang(e)	fang	finge
fechten, <i>fight</i>	V	fechtst	fecht	focht	föchte
finden, <i>find</i>	IV	findest	find(e)	fand	fände
flechten, <i>braid</i>	V	flichtst	flicht	flöcht	flöchte
fliegen, <i>fly</i>	V	fliegest	flieg(e)	flög	flöge
fliehen, <i>flee</i>	V	fliehst	flieh(e)	flöh	flöfe
fließen, <i>flow</i>	V	fließ(e)t	fließ(e)	flöß	flöfli
fressen, <i>eat</i>	II	friß(e)f	friß	fräß	fräfe
frieren, <i>freeze</i>	V	frierst	frier(e)	froar	fröre
*gären, <i>ferment</i>	V	gärt	gärt(e)	gor	göre

PRESENT	2D SING. PRESENT	PAST	PERFECT
<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Participle</i>
gebären, bear	II gebiert, gebärft gebier, gebär(e)	gebar	gebäre
geben, give	II gibst	gab	gäbe
gebeihen, prosper	III gebeihft	gebeih(e)	gebiehē
gehen, go	I gehst	geh(e)	gebiehē
gelingen, succeed	IV es gelingt	wanting	gegangen
gelten, be worth	II giltft	gilt	gelunge
genesen, recover	II genes(e)ft	genes(e)	gelinge
genießen, enjoy	V genieße)ft	genieße(e)	golungen
geschiehen, happen	II es geschieht	wanting	golgolten
gießen, pour	V gieße)ft	gieß(e)	genesen
gleichfen, be like	III gleichft	gleich(e)	genäß
gleiten, glide	III gleite)ft	gleit(e)	genäß
glimmen, glimmer	V glimmt	glimm(e)	genäß
graben, dig	I gräßft	gräß(e)	genäß
greifen, seize	III greifft	greif(e)	genäß
halten, hold	I hältft	hält(e)	genäß
hängen, hang	I hängft	häng(e)	genäß
hauen, hew	I hauft	hau(e)	hiehē
heben, raise	V heft	heft(e)	hiehē

heißen, call	I	heiß(e)t	heiß(e)	heiße	hieß	hieße
helfen, help	II	hilft	hilf	half	half	half
*tiefen, choose	V	tief(e)t	tieſ(e)	töre	töre	töffe
*trieben, cleave	V	trieb(e)t	trieb(e)	tröb	tröb	tröffe
*klimmen, climb	V	klimmt	klimm(e)	klomm	klomm	klönme
ringen, sound	IV	ringt	ring(e)	rang	rang	ringe
knien, pinch	III	knieſt	knieſ(e)	knif	knif	kniffe
kommen, come	II	kommt	komm	kam	käme	kämme
*treiſchen, scream	III	treiſch(e)t	treiſch(e)	trifch	trifch	trifße
trieſchen, creep	V	trieſt	trieſ(e)	tröf	tröf	tröffe
*türen, choose	V	türt	tür(e)	töre	töre	töffe
*laden, load	I	lädt	läb(e)	lub	lub	lübe
läſſen, let	I	läſſ(e)t	läß	ließ	ließ	ließe
laufen, run	I	läufit	lauf	lief	lief	lief
leiden, suffer	III	leidest	leid(e)	litt	litt	litt
leihen, lend	III	leihſt	leih(e)	lieh	lieh	ließe
leſen, read	II	leſ(e)t	leſ(e)	laſ	laſ	laſe
liegen, lie	II	liegt	lieg(e)	lag	lag	läge
*löſchen, be extinguished	V	löſch(e)t	löſch(e)	loſf	loſf	loſfße
lügen, lie	V	lügt	lüg(e)	log	log	läge
meißen, avoid	III	meiſt	meiſ(e)	mieb	mieb	miſe

PRESENT	2D SING. PRESENT	INDICATIVE	PRESENT	IMPERATIVE	PAST	INDIC.	SUBJ.	PERFECT	PARTICIPLE
<i>Infinitive</i>									
*melken, <i>milk</i>	V	milft	milft	milf	molt	mölte	mölte	gemolten	
meßen, <i>measure</i>	II	miß(e)t	miß	maß	maß	mäße	mäße	gemessen	
nehmen, <i>take</i>	II	nimmst	nimm	nahm	nahm	nähme	nähme	genommen	
pfeifen, <i>whistle</i>	III	pfeift	pfeift(e)	pfeif	pfeif	pfeife	pfeife	gepfeiften	
*pflegen, <i>attend to</i>	V	pflegst	pfleg(e)	pfleg	pfleg	pflege	pflege	gepflogen	
preisen, <i>praise</i>	III	preiſ(e)t	preiſ(e)	pries	pries	prieſe	prieſe	gepriesen	
quellen, <i>gush</i>	V	quillt	quill	quoll	quoll	quölle	quölle	gequollen	
raten, <i>advise</i>	I	räfft	rat(e)	riet	riet	riete	riete	geraten	
reiben, <i>rub</i>	III	reibſt	reib(e)	rieb	rieb	riebſe	riebſe	gerieben	
reißen, <i>tear</i>	III	reiß(e)t	reiß(e)	riß	riß	riſſe	riſſe	gerissen	
reiten, <i>ride</i>	III	reiteſt	reit(e)	ritt	ritt	ritte	ritte	geritten	
rieſſen, <i>smell</i>	V	rieſſt	rieſſ(e)	roß	roß	röſje	röſje	geroſſen	
ringen, <i>wrestle</i>	IV	ringſt	ring(e)	rang	rang	ränge	ränge	gerungen	
rimmen, <i>run</i>	IV	rimſt	rim(e)	ram	ram	rüme	rüme	gerommen	
rufen, <i>call</i>	I	rufft	ruf(e)	rief	rief	riefe	riefe	gerufen	
laufen, <i>drink</i>	V	ſäufſt	ſäuf(e)	ſoff	ſoff	ſoffe	ſoffe	geſoffen	
laugen, <i>suck</i>	V	ſaugſt	ſaug(e)	fog	fog	föge	föge	geſaugt	
ſchaffen, <i>create</i>	I	ſchaffſt	ſchaff(e)	ſchuf	ſchuf	ſchüfe	ſchüfe	geſchaffen	
ſchreien, <i>part</i>	III	ſchreieſt	ſchreie(e)	ſtrieb	ſtrieb	ſtrieb	ſtrieb	geſtrieben	

ſ्वeinen, seem	III	ſ्वeint	ſ्वeint (e)	ſ्वien	ſ्वiene	geföhrienen
ſ्वelten, scold	II	ſ्वelt	ſ्वelt	ſ्वalt	ſ्वälte	geföhlt
* ſ्वerden, shear	V	ſ्वierdt	ſ्वierdt	ſ्वor	ſ्वöre	geföhren
ſ्वieben, shave	V	ſ्वiebt	ſ्वiebt (e)	ſ्वob	ſ्वöbe	geföhren
ſ्वießen, shoot	V	ſ्वieß (e)	ſ्वieß (e)	ſ्वob	ſ्वöbe	geföhren
ſ्वinden, stay	IV	ſ्वindet	ſ्वindet (e)	ſ्वob	ſ्वöbe	geföhren
ſ्वafen, sleep	I	ſ्वäfft	ſ्वäfft (e)	ſ्वant	ſ्वünde	geföhnt
ſ्वagen, strike	I	ſ्वlägt	ſ्वlag (e)	ſ्वief	ſ्वiefe	geföhren
ſ्वleiben, sneak	III	ſ्वleibt	ſ्वleib (e)	ſ्वieg	ſ्वiege	geföhnen
ſ्वleisen, whet	III	ſ्वleift	ſ्वleif (e)	ſ्वieff	ſ्वieff	geföhnen
ſ्वleisen, slip	V	ſ्वlieft	ſ्वlieft (e)	ſ्वiiff	ſ्वieff	geföhnen
ſ्वließen, close	V	ſ्वließ (e)	ſ्वließ (e)	ſ्वiiff	ſ्वieff	geföhnen
ſ्वlingen, wind	IV	ſ्वlings	ſ्वling (e)	ſ्वiange	ſ्वiange	geföhungen
ſ्वmeien, smile	III	ſ्वmet	ſ्वmet (e)	ſ्वiis	ſ्वieff	geföhnen
* ſ्वmelzen, melt	V	ſ्वmitz (e)	ſ्वmitz (e)	ſ्वiolt	ſ्वiolt	geföhnen
ſ्वneiden, cut	III	ſ्वneidet	ſ्वneid (e)	ſ्वmitt	ſ्वmitt	geföhnen
ſ्वreden, be afraid	II	ſ्वridet	ſ्वridet	ſ्वrat	ſ्वräte	geföhren
ſ्वreiben, write	III	ſ्वreibt	ſ्वreib (e)	ſ्वrieb	ſ्वrieb	geföhrihen
ſ्वreien, cry	III	ſ्वreit	ſ्वrei (e)	ſ्वrie	ſ्वrie	geföhren
ſ्वreiten, stride	III	ſ्वreitet	ſ्वreit (e)	ſ्वritt	ſ्वritt	geföhrt
ſ्वreiegen, be silent	III	ſ्वreiegt	ſ्वreiege (e)	ſ्वrieg	ſ्वrieg	geföhrt

PRESENT	2D SING. PRESENT	PAST	Subj.	PERFECT
<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Participle</i>
* ſchwellen, swell	V ſchwölle	ſchwoll	ſchwölle	geſchwollen
ſchwimmen, swim	IV ſchwimmſt	ſchwimm(e)	ſchwimme	geſchwommen
ſchwinden, disappear	IV ſchwindeſt	ſchwind(e)	ſchwände	geſchwunden
ſchwingen, swing	IV ſchwingſt	ſchwing(e)	ſchwänge	geſchwungen
ſchören, swear	V ſchörſt	ſchör(e)	ſchwur, ſchwor	geſchworen
ſehen, see	II ſiehſt	ſieh	ſähe	geſiehen
ſein, be	Irr. biſt	biſt	war	geweſen
ſieden, boil	V ſiebſt	ſieb(e)	ſöte	geſötet
ſingen, sing	IV ſingſt	ſing(e)	ſänge	geſungen
ſinken, sink	IV ſinſt	ſinſt(e)	ſanke	geſunken
ſinnen, think	IV ſinnſt	ſinn(e)	ſinne	geſonnen
ſitzen, sit	II ſiſt(e)t	ſiſt(e)	ſäße	geſeffen
ſpielen, spit	III ſpielſt	ſpiel	ſpie	geſpielt
ſpinnen, spin	IV ſpinnſt	ſpinn(e)	ſpinnne	geſpommen
ſprechen, speak	II ſprichſt	ſprich	ſpräche	geſprochen
ſtricken, sprout	V ſtrickeſt	ſtrickeſt(e)	ſproß	geſproffen
ſpringen, spring	IV ſpringſt	ſpring(e)	ſprung	geſprung
ſtechen, prick	II ſtichſt	ſtich	ſtach	geſtochen
ſtehen, stand	Irr. ſtehſt	ſteh(e)	ſtand	geſtanden

PRESENT <i>Infinitive</i>	2D SING. PRESENT		Imperative	Indic.	Past	Subj.	Perfect <i>Participle</i>
	Indicative	Imperative					
* <i>wägen, weigh</i>	V <i>wägft</i>	<i>wäg(e)</i>	<i>wäg</i>	<i>wäg</i>	<i>wäge</i>	<i>wägte</i>	<i>gewogen</i>
<i>wäſſern, wash</i>	I <i>wäſſer(e)t</i>	<i>wäſſer(e)</i>	<i>wäſſer</i>	<i>wäſſer</i>	<i>wäſſer</i>	<i>wäſſerte</i>	<i>gewäſſert</i>
* <i>neben, weave</i>	V <i>weſſt</i>	<i>weſſ(e)</i>	<i>weſſ</i>	<i>weſſ</i>	<i>weſſe</i>	<i>weſſe</i>	<i>geweſſen</i>
<i>weitſen, yield</i>	III <i>weitſt</i>	<i>weitſ(e)</i>	<i>weitſ</i>	<i>weitſ</i>	<i>weitſe</i>	<i>weitſe</i>	<i>geweitſen</i>
<i>weſſen, show</i>	III <i>weif(e)t</i>	<i>weif(e)</i>	<i>weif</i>	<i>weif</i>	<i>weifſe</i>	<i>weifſe</i>	<i>geweſſen</i>
<i>werben, sue</i>	II <i>wirbſt</i>	<i>wirbſt</i>	<i>wirbſt</i>	<i>wirbſt</i>	<i>wirbſ</i>	<i>wirbſe</i>	<i>geworben</i>
<i>werden, become</i>	II <i>wirſt</i>	<i>wirſt</i>	<i>wirſt</i>	<i>wirſt</i>	<i>wirb</i>	<i>wirb</i>	<i>geworben</i>
<i>werfen, throw</i>	II <i>wirſt</i>	<i>wirſt</i>	<i>wirſt</i>	<i>wirſt</i>	<i>wirſ</i>	<i>wirſe</i>	<i>geworfen</i>
<i>wiegen, weigh</i>	V <i>wiegeſt</i>	<i>wiege(e)</i>	<i>wiege</i>	<i>wiege</i>	<i>wiege</i>	<i>wiege</i>	<i>gewiegen</i>
<i>winden, wind</i>	IV <i>windſt</i>	<i>wind(e)</i>	<i>wind</i>	<i>wind</i>	<i>wind</i>	<i>wind</i>	<i>gewunden</i>
<i>ziehen, accuse</i>	III <i>ziehſt</i>	<i>zieh(e)</i>	<i>zieh</i>	<i>zieh</i>	<i>ziehe</i>	<i>ziehe</i>	<i>geziehen</i>
<i>ziehen, draw</i>	V <i>ziehſt</i>	<i>zieh(e)</i>	<i>zieh</i>	<i>zieh</i>	<i>zieg</i>	<i>zieg</i>	<i>geziegen</i>
<i>zwingen, force</i>	IV <i>zwingſt</i>	<i>zwing(e)</i>	<i>zwing</i>	<i>zwing</i>	<i>zwinge</i>	<i>zwinge</i>	<i>gezwungen</i>

1. It will be noticed that verbs which have *ä* in the past tense and *o* in the perfect participle, except when the quantity of these vowels differs, are irregular in the past subjunctive, the vowel becoming *ü*, unless followed by *r* + one consonant, when it becomes *ü*. The only exceptions to this rule are *helfen*, *häft*, *gehäft*, *hüſſe*; and *gebüren*, *gebar*, *gehören*, *gehüre*.

THE REFLEXIVE

267. Reflexive verbs (281) are of two kinds: pure reflexives, which are used only reflexively, or as reflexives have a distinct meaning, and consequently often have no exact English equivalent, such as *sich schämen*, *to be ashamed*, *sich freuen*, *to be glad*; and false reflexives, which may be any verb used with a reflexive object, as *sich verbergen*, *to conceal one's self*. The following are some of the more important pure reflexives:

<i>sich aufhalten, stay</i>	<i>sich erkundigen, nach, inquire</i>
<i>sich befinden, be (well or ill)</i>	<i>sich freuen, gen., über, rejoice</i>
<i>sich beklagen, über, complain</i>	<i>sich fürchten, vor, be afraid</i>
<i>sich benehmen, behave</i>	<i>sich grämen, über, um, grieve</i>
<i>sich besinnen, gen., auf, call to mind</i>	<i>sich irren, be mistaken</i>
<i>sich betragen, behave</i>	<i>sich nähern, approach</i>
<i>sich entschließen, determine</i>	<i>sich schämen, gen., wegen, über, be ashamed</i>
<i>sich erbarmen, gen., über, pity</i>	<i>sich sehnen, nach, long</i>
<i>sich ergeben, yield</i>	<i>sich verlassen, auf, rely</i>
<i>sich erholen, recover</i>	<i>sich verspäten, come too late</i>
<i>sich erinnern, gen., an, remember</i>	<i>sich verstellen, feign</i>
<i>sich erkälten, catch cold</i>	<i>sich weigern, gen., refuse</i>
<i>sich erkühnen, dare</i>	<i>sich wundern, über, be surprised</i>

268. The following are the important impersonal reflexives:

es begibt sich
es ereignet sich
es trägt sich zu } *it happens, occurs*

es begreift sich, it is conceivable
es findet sich, it appears, turns out
es fragt sich, it is questionable

es gehört sich
 es schickt sich } *it is becoming, proper*
 es ziemt sich
 es handelt sich (um etwas), *the question is, something is at stake*
 es verhält sich so, *it stands thus*
 es verlohnt sich, *it is worth while*
 es versteht sich (von selbst), *it is a matter of course*

THE PARTICIPLES

269. The present participle is a verbal adjective, and as such may have any of the uses of the adjective (105), except that it is not used predicatively with verbal force. When translating the English present participle, or the verbal noun in *-ing*, render in German —

- a. When object (or object complement) of a verb, by an infinitive : *I saw him coming*, Ich sah ihn kommen ; *Then he stopped working*, Dannhörte er auf zu arbeiten.
- b. When an adjective qualifier, by a relative clause : *There is a boy calling you*, Dort ist ein Knabe, der Sie ruft.
- c. After a preposition, expressed or understood (275), by a finite clause introduced by the proper conjunction : *But (upon) seeing me, she stopped*, Da sie mich aber sah, hörte sie auf.

270. The Perfect Participle: The perfect participle is often used with the force of an imperative, expressing a more general command : *Zeigt, Burschen, festgehalten ! Now, boys, hold tight !*

271. The perfect participle is used after kommen, where we should expect a present participle : *Dort kommt ein Mann in voller Hast gelaufen*, *There comes a man running at full speed*.

THE INFINITIVE

272. The infinitive is a verbal noun and may perform any of the functions of a noun. It is then capitalized (16, a), is neuter (91, a), and generally has the definite article: *Das Laufen ist heute schwierig, Walking is difficult to-day.*

273. After verbs of affirming, believing, wishing, and kindred meanings, an infinitive clause may not be used unless the subject of the two clauses is the same: *Sch wünsche, es zu tun, I wish to do it; but Sch wünsche, daß er es tue, I wish him to do it.*

274. An infinitive with *zu* (160, 167), if qualified, is generally treated as a distinct clause, and set off with commas, unless it is part of a dependent clause which has no other adjunct: *Sch werde gleich gehen, um ihn hier nicht zu treffen, I shall go at once, in order not to meet him here; but Da ich es zu tun wünsche, Since I wish to do it.*

275. The infinitive with *zu* is used after the prepositions *anstatt*, *instead of*; *ohne*, *without*; and *um*, *in order to*: *anstatt zu kommen, instead of coming; um zu gehen, in order to go.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE

276. The underlying idea of the subjunctive is doubt as to the accuracy, or uncertainty as to the fulfillment, of a statement. Its principal uses are —

a. Hortatory Subjunctive, to express an exhortation:

Der Mensch versuche die Götter nicht, Let man not tempt the gods.

b. Optative Subjunctive, to express a wish: *O, hätte ich nimmer diesen Tag gesehen! (Sch.) O that I had never seen this day.*

c. Unreal Subjunctive, to express an unreal condition (222) : *Wenn ich Sie wäre, täte ich das nicht, If I were you, I should not do that.*

1. In unreal conditions the past tense is used to express a present condition, and the past perfect to express a past condition. But in the conclusion the conditional and conditional perfect may be used instead of the subjunctive : *Wenn ich Sie wäre, würde ich das nicht tun, etc.*

d. Subjunctive of Indirect Discourse (207), to show that the speaker is unwilling to vouch for the accuracy of the statement : *Er sagt mir, daß er eine bessere Uhr habe, He tells me that he has a better watch (but I have only his word for it).* Consequently, when the statement is one that the speaker knows to be true, the indicative is used : *Er sagt mir, daß Berlin die Hauptstadt von Deutschland ist, He tells me that Berlin is the capital of Germany.*

1. In indirect discourse the tense of the subjunctive is generally the same as the tense of direct discourse, except when the resulting form could not be distinguished from the indicative, in which case the nearest secondary tense is used : (direct) *Er ist ein alter Mann, He is an old man;* (indirect) *Er sagte, daß er ein alter Mann sei, He said that he was an old man;* — but (direct) *Sie haben nur ein Buch, They have only one book;* (indirect) *Er sagte, daß sie nur ein Buch hätten, He said that they had only one book.* But a past tense of direct discourse becomes a perfect (or past perfect) in indirect discourse, and an imperative becomes the subjunctive of *sollen* with a complementary infinitive : (direct) *Gehe nach Hause, Go home;* (indirect) *Er sagte, daß ich nach Hause gehen solle.*

e. Potential Subjunctive, to express possibility : *Bequemlich säßen viere darin, und auf dem Bocke der Kutschere (G.), Four might sit in it comfortably, and on the box the coachman.*

1. Diplomatic Subjunctive. The potential subjunctive is often used to make a statement seem less positive : *Ich dächte wohl, I should think ; Es möchte nicht unschuldig sein, It might not be improper.*

2. Dubitative Subjunctive. In questions or exclamations the subjunctive may also be used to express doubt or surprise : *Das hätt' der Tell getan (Sich.) ! You say Tell did that !*

3. The potential subjunctive is often used in dependent clauses to denote purpose : *Wir wollen gehen, damit er uns nicht sehe, Let us go, so that he may not see us.*

THE TENSES

277. The Present : The present tense denotes —

a. Action going on in the present, regardless of the starting-point : *Er kommt, he is coming ; Wir wohnen seit vielen Jahren in diesem Hause, We have been living in this house for many years.*

i. When the present is used to denote action begun in the past and continued in the present, which is expressed by the English perfect, seit or schon is generally used in the adverbial expression : *Wir haben schon (or seit) lange keinen Brief von ihm, We have not had a letter from him for a long time.*

b. Action stated without regard for time : *Übung macht den Meister, Practice makes perfect.*

278. The Past : The past tense denotes —

a. Repeated or continued past action : *Ich besuchte ihn jeden Tag, I used to visit him every day.*

b. Past action that is stated in its relation to other events, consequently the tense of narration : *Es war einmal ein kleines Mädchen, das Rotkäppchen hieß, Once upon a time there was a little girl whose name was Little Red Riding-Hood.*

c. Action begun in the past and continued through some subsequent point of past time (277, a, 1) : *Wir wohnten dann schon viele Jahre hier, We had then been living here for many years.*

279. The Future : The future tense denotes —

a. Action that has not yet taken place : *Ich werde morgen kommen, I shall come to-morrow.*

b. Probability, often with *wohl* : *Er wird schon hier sein, He is probably here already.*

280. The Perfect : The perfect tense denotes —

a. Action completed in the past, the result of which is felt in the present : *Ich habe mich müde gelaufen, I have run myself tired (until I am now tired).*

b. Past action which is independent of any other event (278, b) : *Ich bin arm gewesen, I have been (was) poor.*

281. The Past Perfect : The past perfect tense denotes —

a. Action completed prior to some point of past time, the result of which was felt in the past : *Sieben Jahre hatte er um sie geworben, For seven years he had wooed her (and then he got her).*

b. Action completed prior to some point of past time and independent of any other event : *Ich hatte es ihm gesagt, I had told it to him.*

282. The Future Perfect : The future perfect tense denotes —

a. Action to be completed before some point of future time : *Ich werde ihn gesehen haben, ehe Sie kommen, I shall have seen him before you come.*

b. Probability of a past action, often with *wohl* (279, b) : *Er wird (wohl) gekommen sein, He has probably come.*

WORD-FORMATION

283. Words are either primitive or derivative. A primitive word is one that is derived from no previous root in the language. A derivative is a primitive root modified by ablaut, prefix, or suffix. A root is a primitive element on which all derived forms are based ; as; danken (root dank), *thank* ; dankbar, *thankful* ; undankbar, *unthankful* ; Dankbarkeit, *thankfulness*.

NOUNS

284. Derivation by Ablaut: Many verbal roots or stems are used without suffix to form nouns. The stem as it appears in any form of the verb may be used, though the stem of the past tense or perfect participle is more frequent, so that several nouns are sometimes formed from the same verb ; as, binden (stems bind, band, bund), *bind* ; der Band, *the volume* ; der Bund, *the confederation*. Most nouns thus formed are masculine.

285. Derivation by Suffix: Most derivatives are formed from a verbal root or stem, or from a noun or adjective stem, by means of a suffix, the root vowel being generally umlauted when there is an i or an e in the suffix. The most common suffixes are —

chen,lein, + noun stems, form diminutives ; as, Haus, *house*, Häuschen, *cottage* ; Frau, *woman*, Fräulein, *young lady*, *miss*. The diminutive often denotes endearment ; as, Mütterchen, *little mother*.

de, + verbal roots, denotes the thing done ; as, Gebäude (bauen), *building* ; Runde (fennen), *knowledge* ; Gelübde (geloben), *vow* ; Gemälde (malen), *painting*.

e, forms many nouns, mostly feminine.

- + verbal roots, denotes an action or its result, or the thing performing the action ; as, *Hilfe* (*helfen*), *help*; *Gabe* (*geben*), *gift*; *Spinne* (*spinnen*), *spider*.
- + adjective stems, forms abstracts ; as, *Größe* (*groß*), *greatness*; *Wärme*, *warmth*; *Tiefe*, *depth*.

(er)ei, + verbal or noun stems, forms feminines denoting continued action, the place of action, or a business ; as, *Raserei* (*rasen*), *raving*; *Schneiderei* (*Schneider*), *tailoring*; *Brauerei* (*brauen*), *brewery*; *Töpferei* (*Töpf*), *pottery, ceramic art*.

el, + verbal roots, forms masculines denoting instrument ; as, *Hebel* (*heben*), *lever*; *Dedel* (*decken*), *cover*; *Bügel* (*ziehen*), *rein*; *Stachel* (*stechen*), *sting*.

er, + verbal roots, denotes the masculine agent ; as, *Bäder* (*baden*), *baker*; *Maler* (*malen*), *painter*; *Weder* (*wedeln*), *alarm*.

- + noun stems, denotes station or occupation ; as, *Gärtner* (*Garten*), *gardener*; *Töpfer* (*Töpf*), *potter*; *Pförtner* (*Pforte*), *porter*.

heit, feit, are cognate with the suffixes *head, hood*.

- + adjective stems, form abstract feminines ; as, *Blindheit* (*blind*), *blindness*; *Kleinigkeit* (*klein*), *trifle*; *Einheit* (*ein*), *oneness, unity, unit*; *Eitelkeit* (*eitel*), *vanity*.

- + noun stems, form collectives, or nouns denoting a quality or condition ; as, *Gottheit* (*Gott*), *godhead*; *Christenheit* (*Christen*), *Christendom*; *Narrheit* (*Narr*), *foolishness*.

in, + masculine stems, forms feminine derivatives ; as, *Königin* (*König*), *queen*; *Gattin* (*Gatte*), *wife*; *Schaffnerin* (*Schaffner*), *stewardess*.

ling, + verbal roots, denotes the performer of an action, or the one on whom it is performed ; as, *Sprößling* (*sprießen*), *sprout*; *Lehrling* (*lehren*), *pupil*; *Pflegling* (*pflegen*), *nursling*.

- + noun or adjective stems, denotes the possessor of a quality or thing ; as, *Günstling* (*Gunst*), *favorite*; *Jüngling* (*jung*), *young man*; *Sonderling* (*sonder*), *queer person*.

nis, + verbal roots, or noun or adjective stems, forms abstracts, which often become concrete ; as, *Begräbnis* (*begraben*), *burial*; *Hindernis* (*hindern*), *hindering, hindrance*; *Bildnis* (*Bild*), *image*; *Tinse*, *darkness*.

sal, + verbal roots, forms nouns of active or passive force; as, *Labſal* (*laben*), *refreshment*; *Schidſal* (*ſchiden*), *fate (that which sends, or that which is sent)*.

ſhaft, is cognate with the suffix *ſhip*.

+ noun or adjective stems, forms feminine abstracts and collectives; as, *Erbschaft* (*Erbe*), *inheritance*; *Verwandtſchaft* (*verwandt*), *relationship*; *Brüderſchaft* (*Brüder*), *fraternity*.

tum, is cognate with *dom*.

+ noun or adjective stems, forms neuters denoting the sphere or the embodiment of a quality; as, *Fürſtentum* (*Fürſt*), *principality*; *Heiligtum* (*heilig*), *sanctum*; *Eigentum* (*eigen*), *property*.

ung, is cognate with *ing* (of the verbal noun, not of the participle).

+ verbal roots, forms feminine abstracts, which often become concrete, and sometimes collectives; as, *Regierung* (*regieren*), *ruling, government*; *Waldung* (*Wald*), *woodland*; *Öffnung* (*öffnen*), *opening*.

286. Derivation by Prefix: The influence of the prefixes is more easily traced, since they have preserved their own identity more. The most important prefixes are —

Er, cognate with *arch*, meaning *chief*; as, *Erzbischof*, *archbishop*; *Erherzog*, *archduke*.

Ge, denoting completion or perfection.

+ noun stems, generally forms collectives, mostly umlauted; as, *Gebrüder*, *brothers (forming a partnership)*; *Gebrüder Grimm*, *(the) Grimm Brothers*; *Gebüſch*, *bushes, thicket*.

+ verbal roots, forms abstracts, which often become concrete; as, *Gedränge* (*drängen*), *thronging, throng*; *Gehalt* (*halten*), *capacity*.

Miß, cognate with, and meaning, *mis*; as, *Mißregierung*, *misrule*; *Mißtimmung*, *discord*.

Un, cognate with *un*, and having negative force; as, *Unart*, *misbehavior*; *Un dank*, *ingratitude*.

Ur, denoting primitiveness, or origin; as, *Urfang*, *first beginning*; *Urquell*, *fountain-head*.

ADJECTIVES

287. Derivation by Suffix: The most common adjective suffixes are —

artig, from *Art*, *kind*, *manner*.

+ noun or adjective stems, denotes similarity; as, *fremdartig*, *strange* (cf. coll. *strange like*); *ſchaumartig*, *foamy* (*foamlike*).

bar, from the root of *bärten*, *bear*.

+ verbal roots, or noun stems, forms adjectives denoting capacity or embodiment of a quality; as, *ehrbar*, *honorable* (*embodiment of honor*); *heilbar*, *curable* (*capable of being cured*).

en, *ern*, cognate with *en*.

+ noun stems, form adjectives of material; as, *golden*, *golden*; *holzern*, *wooden*.

er, + names of cities, forms indeclinables; as, *Pariser*, *Parisian*; *Berliner*, *from or of Berlin*.

haft, from *haben*, *have*.

+ noun stems, denotes the possession of the quality or thing; as, *tugendhaft*, *virtuous* (*having virtue*); *lebhaft*, *lively*.

ig, cognate with *y* (*smoky*).

+ almost any part of speech, denotes the possession or embodiment of the idea of the original word; as, *bergig*, *hilly* (*having hills*); *gütig*, *kind*; *hiesig* (*hier*), *of this place*.

isch, cognate with, and equivalent to, *ish*.

+ proper names, denotes origin; as, *englisch*, *English* (*from England*).

+ noun stems, denotes similarity; as, *kindisch*, *childish* (*like a child*); *närrisch*, *foolish*.

isch, cognate with, and equivalent to, *ly*.

+ noun stems, denotes similarity, affinity; as, *königlich*, *royal* (*like a king*); *weiblich*, *womanly* (*pertaining to a woman*).

+ adjective stems, it often has weakening force; as, *älterlich*, *elderly* (*getting old*); *kleinlich*, *petty*.

+ verbal roots, denotes active or passive capability; as, *vergeßlich*, *forgetful* (*capable of forgetting*); *zerbrechlich*, *breakable* (*capable of being broken*).

los, cognate with, and equivalent to, the suffix *less*; as, *freundlos*, *friendless*; *mutlos*, *spiritless, discouraged*.

sam, cognate with the suffix *some*.

+ noun stems, denotes a possession of the quality; as, *ehrsam*, *honorable (having honor)*; *furchtsam*, *timid*; *einsam*, *lonesome*.

+ verbal roots, denotes capacity or inclination, generally with passive force; as, *folgsam*, *obedient (capable of obeying)*; *lenksam*, *manageable (capable of being led)*.

288. Derivation by Prefix: The same prefixes are used with adjectives as with nouns, and their force is quite the same.

VERBS

289. All strong, and many weak, verbs are primitives. The large majority of weak verbs have been derived from other parts of speech, but in most cases the original suffix has been lost, an umlaut being now the only sign of derivation.

290. Causatives: Verbs thus formed are largely causatives or factitives, denoting the production of an action or quality, or the provision with the substance of a noun; as, *senken* (*sinken*), *cause to sink*; *decken* (*Dach*), *cover (provide with a roof)*; *lösen*, *loosen (make loose)*.

1. Many later verbs are formed by analogy with these — without the umlaut, however; as, *druden* (*Drud*), *print*; *kräftigen* (*kräftig*), *strengthen*.

291. Derivation by Suffix: The most common suffixes are —

el, + verbal roots, or noun or adjective stems, forms iteratives, denoting repeated action, and diminutives, which often have a contemptuous force; as, *frösten* (*frost*), *feel a slight chill*; *betteln* (*bitten*), *beg (ask continually)*; *frömmeln* (*fromm*), *affect piety*; *lächeln* (*lachen*), *smile*.

er, forms iteratives or intensives; as, *plaudern*, *chatter*; *schlafieren* (*schlafen*), *be sleepy*; *glänzen*, *glisten*; *jögern* (*jiehen*), *linger*, *hesitate*.

ier, added generally to foreign stems, forms many verbs; as, *regieren* (Lat. *regere*), *rule*; *studieren* (Lat. *studere*), *study*; *buchstabieren* (*Buchstabe*), *spell*.

292. Derivation by Prefix: Verbal prefixes are either separable or inseparable. The separable prefixes will not be treated here, since they are generally adverbs which retain their regular meaning and force. The inseparable prefixes are —

be, weakened form of *bei*, *by*, *around*.

+ transitive verbs, denotes greater thoroughness of action, or directs the action more closely to the object; as, *bebauen*, *build up a place*; *besiehen*, *examine*, *look at carefully*.

+ intransitives, makes transitives or more intensive intransitives; as, *betreten*, *tread upon*; *besitzen*, *possess*; *bekommen*, *get (come into)*; *bestehen*, *endure*, *exist*; *beharren*, *persevere*.

+ noun or adjective stems, denotes provision with; as, *begeistern*, *inspire (give spirit to)*; *besiedeln*, *spot*; *befriedigen*, *satisfy*; *befähigen*, *strengthen*.

ent, + verbal stems, denotes the beginning of an action, or separation; as, *entbrennen*, *begin to burn*; *entspringen*, *sprout forth*; *entstehen*, *come into existence*; *entlaufen*, *run away*.

+ noun stems, denotes separation or deprivation; as, *enthüllen*, *uncover*; *entkräften*, *weaken*; *entvölkern*, *depopulate*.

er, + verbal stems, forms intransitive inceptives, denoting the beginning of an action, or transitives denoting the completion or result of an action, or the accomplishment of something by means of an action; as, *erbleichen*, *turn pale*; *ergehen*, *come out*; *erbliden*, *catch sight of*; *erleben*, *experience*; *erkennen*, *recognize*; *ersteigen*, *get to the top of by climbing*.

+ adjective stems, forms inceptives; as, *erkranken*, *become ill*; *errotzen*, *blush (get red)*.

ge, is the most difficult prefix, its force being often quite obscure ; it denotes completion or perfection, sometimes duration, and forms intensives ; as, *gedenken* (*denken*, *think*), *keep in mind, remember* ; *gebieten* (*bieten*, *offer*), *command* ; *gehörchen* (*hören*, *hearken*), *obey*.

ver, + verbal stems, denotes separation, passing from a previous state, detriment ; as, *verjagen*, *chase away* ; *verblühen*, *fade* ; *verführen*, *lead astray* ; *verheiraten*, *marry off* ; *verlassen*, *desert*. + noun or adjective stems, forms factitives, denoting passing into another state ; as, *verbauen*, *become a rustic* ; *verbittern*, *embitter* ; *vergöttern*, *idolize*.

zer, + verbal stems as a rule, denotes separation or total destruction ; as, *zerbrechen*, *break to pieces* ; *zerfallen*, *fall to ruin* ; *zergliedern*, *dismember*.

COGNATES

293. English and German are both members of the Germanic, or Teutonic, group of Indo-European languages. Consequently we may expect to find many words in the two languages which are similar in form. However, as the languages developed, and each was subjected to peculiar influences, certain phonetic changes affecting the consonantal stops appeared which resulted gradually in a complete change of these consonants. This change, called consonant-shifting, confined itself to the High German dialects. Consequently words which used to be the same in English and German now appear with a difference in certain consonants. These words, being of common origin, are called cognates.

294. Examination of cognates will show that where the Germanic had, and the English still has, a voiced stop, the High German has a voiceless stop ; where the English has

a voiceless stop, the German has a voiceless spirant; where the English has a voiceless spirant, the German has a voiced stop. This will be seen better from the following table:

	STOPS		SPIRANTS
	voiceless	voiced	voiceless
Labials	p	b	f (pf) v
Linguals	t	d	th s z
Palatals	k	g	ch

295. The remaining consonants are much alike in the two languages, and these are less apt to differ when initial than when medial or final.

296. Considering these three groups of the consonant, it will be seen that what was a labial, or a lingual, or a palatal, in the Germanic, and therefore now in the English, has remained a labial, lingual, or palatal,—the shifting resulting only in a different kind of labial, etc.; that is, the same organs of speech were used in forming these consonants, but they were used differently.

297. It will be seen further that the difference is always the same, there being just one step between the two languages. The above table will be applicable in most cases; however, there are quite a number of exceptions, due to a variety of causes, one of the most important of which is that in some cases the two languages have borrowed the same word from a third language since the shifting took place, and that consequently this law did not operate.

298. The operation of the law can be traced in the following lists. For practical purposes it will be sufficient to recognize what consonants in the two languages are equivalent in cognate words.

LABIALS

Voiceless Stops ($p = b$):

doppel, double	pappeln, babble	Rippe, rib
Slippe, cliff	Bolster, bolster	Stoppel, stubble
Krippe, crib	prahlen, brawl	

Voiced Stops ($b = f$):

ab, of, off	Herberge, harbor	schieben, shove
Biber, beaver	Herbst, harvest	Sieb, sieve
bleiben, leave	Kalb, calf	sieben, seven
Bube, boy	kleben, cleave	Silber, silver
Dieb, thief	Knabe, knave	Stab, staff
eben, even	Laub, leaf	sterben, starve
Fieber, fever	leben, live	streben, strive
geben, give	Leib, life	Stube, stove
Glaube, belief	Liebe, love	taub, deaf
Graben, grave	Nabel, navel	Taube, dove
Grube, groove	ob, if	treiben, drive
haben, have	ober, over	übel, evil
Habicht, hawk	Rabe, raven	weben, weave
halb, half	Salbe, salve	Weib, wife
heben, heave	schaben, shave	

Voiceless Spirants ($f, pf = ph$):

Affe, ape	hoffen, hope	offen, open
Apfel, apple	hopfen, hop	Pfad, path
auf, up	Kampf, champion	Pfanne, pan
Dampf, damp	laufen, cheap	Pfeffer, pepper
Dorf, thorp	Kopf, cop	Pfeife, pipe
gaffen, gape	Kropf, crop	Pfennig, penny
Harfe, harp	Rüster, cooper	Pfirsich, peach
Haufe, heap	Rupfer, copper	Pflanze, plant
helfen, help	laufen, leap	pflegen, play

<i>W</i> flücht, <i>plight</i>	<i>schaffen, shape</i>	<i>Teufel, devil</i>
<i>W</i> flug, <i>plow</i>	<i>scharf, sharp</i>	<i>tief, deep</i>
<i>W</i> propfen, <i>prop</i>	<i>Schlaf, sleep</i>	<i>Tropfen, drop</i>
<i>W</i> robst, <i>provost</i>	<i>Seife, soap</i>	<i>Waffe, weapon</i>
<i>reif, ripe</i>	<i>streifen, strip</i>	<i>Zapfen, tap</i>
<i>Rumpf, rump</i>	<i>Stufe, step</i>	<i>Zipfel, tip</i>
<i>saufen, sup</i>	<i>Tafel, table</i>	<i>Zopf, top</i>
<i>Schaf, sheep</i>	<i>tapfer, dapper</i>	

LINGUALS

Voiceless Stops (*t* = *d*):

<i>alt, old</i>	<i>Hut, hood</i>	<i>Tat, deed</i>
<i>Bett, bed</i>	<i>laut, loud</i>	<i>taub, deaf</i>
<i>bieten, bid</i>	<i>Mittel, middle</i>	<i>Teich, dike</i>
<i>bitten, bide</i>	<i>Mut, mood</i>	<i>teuer, dear</i>
<i>Blatt, blade</i>	<i>Mutter, mother</i>	<i>Tochter, daughter</i>
<i>Braut, bride</i>	<i>Not, need</i>	<i>Tor, door</i>
<i>breit, broad</i>	<i>retten, rid</i>	<i>tot, dead</i>
<i>Brot, bread</i>	<i>rot, red</i>	<i>tragen, draw</i>
<i>Brut, brood</i>	<i>Rute, rod</i>	<i>Traum, dream</i>
<i>Büttel, beadle</i>	<i>Saat, seed</i>	<i>traurig, dreary</i>
<i>dritt, third</i>	<i>satt, sad</i>	<i>treten, tread</i>
<i>eitel, idle</i>	<i>Sattel, saddle</i>	<i>trinken, drink</i>
<i>Euter, udder</i>	<i>Schatten, shadow</i>	<i>trocken, drought</i>
<i>Flut, flood</i>	<i>Schlitten, sled</i>	<i>tüchtig, doughty</i>
<i>Futter, fodder</i>	<i>Schulter, shoulder</i>	<i>Vater, father</i>
<i>Garten, garden</i>	<i>Schwert, sword</i>	<i>walten, wield</i>
<i>gelten, yield</i>	<i>Seite, side</i>	<i>waten, wade</i>
<i>Gott, god</i>	<i>selten, seldom</i>	<i>weit, wide</i>
<i>gut, good</i>	<i>Spaten, spade</i>	<i>Welt, world</i>
<i>hart, hard</i>	<i>Tag, day</i>	<i>Wetter, weather</i>
<i>hinter, hind</i>	<i>Tal, dale</i>	<i>Wort, word</i>
<i>hüten, heed</i>	<i>Tanz, dance</i>	<i>Zeit, tide</i>

Voiced Stops (*d* = *th*):

ander, other	dick, thick	Feber, feather
Bad, bath	Ding, thing	Heide, heathen
beide, both	doch, though	Herd, hearth
Boden, bottom	Donner, thunder	Kleid, cloth
Bruder, brother	Dorn, thorn	Kund, couth
Bude, booth	Drang, throng	Leder, leather
Bürde, burthen	du, thou	leiden, loathe
Dank, thank	dumm, dumb	Mahd, math
dann, then	dünn, thin	Mund, mouth
doch, that	durch, through	nieder, nether
Daumen, thumb	Durst, thirst	Nord, north
dein, thine	Eid, oath	Schmied, smith
denken, think	Erde, earth	sieben, seethe

Voiceless Spirants (*ß, ff, ʒ, ʒ̄ = t*):

beissen, bite	Malz, malt	wissen, wot
besser, better	Netz, net	Witz, wit
Bissen, bit	Nuß, nut	Wurz, wort
essen, eat	Pelz, pelt	Zahl, tale
Faß, vat	Salz, salt	zahm, tame
Fessel, fetter	schießen, shoot	Zange, tongs
Floß, float	Schmerz, smart	Beh, toe
fressen, fret	Schnauze, snout	Beichen, token
Fuß, foot	Schurz, shirt	Zeitung, tidings
groß, great	Sessel, settle	Zelt, tilt
Gruß, greet	sitzen, sit	Zimmer, timber
Haß, hate	Straße, street	Zinn, tin
heizen, heat	vergeffen, forget	Zoll, toll
Hertz, heart	Warze, wart	zu, to
Kessel, kettle	Wasser, water	Zug, tug
Kreuz, cross	weiß, white	zünden, tinder
laffen, let	Weizen, wheat	Zweig, twig
Lenz, Lent	wezen, whet	Zwielicht, twilight

PALATALS

Voiceless Stops (*t* = *ch*, *d* = *dge*, *tch*):

baden, batch	heden, hatch	Rinn, chin
Bank, bench	juden, itch	Kirche, church
Barke, barge	Kalk, chalk	Kiste, chest
Birke, birch	Kammer, chamber	Krüde, crutch
Brücke, bridge	karg, chary	kühl, cool
Ecke, edge	kauen, chew	Mücke, midge
Hedge, hedge	Kerl, churl	strecken, stretch

Voiced Stops (*g* = *y*, *w*, *gh*):

Auge, eye	Garn, yarn	Riegel, rail
Ballg, bellows	Garten, yard	Säge, saw
bergen, bury	genug, enough	sagen, say
Bogen, bow	gestern, yesterday	Segel, sail
borgen, borrow	Hagel, hail	Sorge, sorrow
Burg, borough	legen, lay	Talg, tallow
eigen, own	mögen, may	Trog, trough
Flegel, flail	Morgen, Morrow	Bogel, fowl
folgen, follow	Nagel, nail	Weg, way
Galgen, gallows	Pegel, pail	Ziegel, tile

Voiceless Spirants (*ɸ* = *k*, *ɸt* = *ght*):

Becher, beaker	Kuchen, cake	Rechen, rake
bleich, bleak	lachen, laugh	recht, right
Buch, book	Licht, light	schlecht, slight
dicht, tight	machen, make	Sicht, sight
Eiche, oak	Macht, might	Storch, stork
fechten, fight	manch, many	suchen, seek
Joch, yoke	Mönch, monk	wachen, wake
Knecht, knight	Nachbar, neighbor	weich, weak
Knöchel, knuckle	Nacht, night	Wicht, weight
Koch, cook	nicht, naught	Woche, week

APPENDIX

299. Paradigms of the Weak Verb:

a. *machen, make, machte, gemacht*:

Present: *I make (am making, do make), etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
ich mache	ich mache	
du machst	du machest	mache, make
er macht	er mache	
wir machen	wir mache[n]	
ihr macht	ihr mache[n]	macht, make
sie machen	sie mache[n]	machen Sie, make

Past: *I made (was making, did make), etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
ich machte	ich machte
du machtest	du machtest
er machte	er machte
wir machten	wir machten
ihr machtet	ihr machtet
sie machten	sie machten

PARTICIPLES

Present: *machend, making*

Perfect: *gemacht, made*

INFINITIVES

machen, to make

gemacht haben, to have made

Perfect: *I have made (I made)*, etc.

INDICATIVE

ich habe	gemacht
du hast	
er hat	
wir haben	
ihr habt	
sie haben	

SUBJUNCTIVE

ich habe	gemacht
du habest	
er habe	
wir haben	
ihr habet	
sie haben	

Past Perfect: *I had made*, etc.

INDICATIVE

ich hatte	gemacht
du hattest	
er hatte	
wir hatten	
ihr hattet	
sie hatten	

SUBJUNCTIVE

ich hätte	gemacht
du hättest	
er hätte	
wir hätten	
ihr hätten	
sie hätten	

Future: *I shall (should) make*, etc.

INDICATIVE

ich werde	machen
du wirst	
er wird	
wir werden	
ihr werdet	
sie werden	

SUBJUNCTIVE

ich werde	machen
du werdest	
er werde	
wir werden	
ihr werdet	
sie werden	

CONDITIONAL

ich würde	machen
du würdest	
er würde	
wir würden	
ihr würdet	
sie würden	

Future Perfect: *I shall (should) have made, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	CONDITIONAL
ich werde	ich werde	ich würde
du wirst	du werdest	du würdest
er wird	gemacht	er würde
wir werden	haben	wir würden
ihr werdet	ir werden	ihr würdet
sie werden	sie werden	sie würden

b. The auxiliary verb *haben*, *have*, *hatte*, *gehabt*:

Present: *I have (am having, do have), etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
ich habe	ich habe	
du hast	du habest	habe, <i>have</i>
er hat	er habe	
wir haben	wir haben	
ihr habt	ihr habet	habt, <i>have</i>
sie haben	sie haben	haben Sie, <i>have</i>

Past: *I had (was having, did have), etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
ich hatte	ich hätte
du hattest	du hättest
er hatte	er hätte
wir hatten	wir hätten
ihr hattet	ihr hättest
sie hatten	sie hätten

PARTICIPLES

Present: *habend, having*

Perfect: *gehabt, had*

INFINITIVES

haben, to have

gehabt haben, to have had

Perfect: *I have had (I had)*, etc.

INDICATIVE

ich habe	} gehabt
du hast	
er hat	
wir haben	
ihr habt	
sie haben	

SUBJUNCTIVE

ich habe	} gehabt
du habest	
er habe	
wir haben	
ihr habet	
sie haben	

Past Perfect: *I had had*, etc.

INDICATIVE

ich hatte	} gehabt
du hattest	
er hatte	
wir hatten	
ihr hattet	
sie hatten	

SUBJUNCTIVE

ich hätte	} gehabt
du hättest	
er hätte	
wir hätten	
ihr hättest	
sie hätten	

Future: *I shall (should) have*, etc.

INDICATIVE

ich werde	} haben
du wirst	
er wird	
wir werden	
ihr werdet	
sie werden	

SUBJUNCTIVE

ich werde	} haben
du werdest	
er werde	
wir werden	
ihr werdet	
sie werden	

CONDITIONAL

ich würde	} haben
du würdest	
er würde	
wir würden	
ihr würdet	
sie würden	

Future Perfect: *I shall (should) have had, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	CONDITIONAL
ich werde	ich werde	ich würde
du wirst	du werdest	du würdest
er wird	er werde	er würde
wir werden	wir werden	wir würden
ihr werdet	ihr werdet	ihr würdet
sie werden	sie werden	sie würden

300. Paradigms of the Strong Verb :

a. *sehen, see, sah, gesehen:*

Present: *I see (am seeing, do see); etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
ich sehe	ich sehe	
du siehst	du sehest	sieh, see
er sieht	er sehe	
wir sehen	wir sehen	
ihr sieht	ihr sehet	seht, see
sie sehen	sie sehen	sehen Sie, see

Past: *I saw (was seeing, did see), etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
ich sah	ich sähe
du sahst	du sähest
er sah	er sähe
wir sahen	wir sähen
ihr saht	ihr sähet
sie sahen	sie sähen

PARTICIPLES

Present: *sehend, seeing*

Perfect: *gesehen, seen*

INFINITIVES

sehen, to see

gesehen haben, to have seen

Perfect: *I have seen (I saw), etc.*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
ich habe	gesehen	ich habe	gesehen
du hast		du habest	
er hat		er habe	
wir haben		wir haben	
ihr habet		ihr habet	
sie haben		sie haben	

Past Perfect: *I had seen, etc.*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
ich hatte	gesehen	ich hätte	gesehen
du hattest		du hättest	
er hatte		er hätte	
wir hatten		wir hätten	
ihr hattet		ihr hättest	
sie hatten		sie hätten	

Future: *I shall (should) see, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	CONDITIONAL
ich werde	sehen	ich würde
du wirst		du würdest
er wird		er würde
wir werden		wir würden
ihr werdet		ihr würdet
sie werden		sie würden

Future Perfect: *I shall (should) have seen, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	CONDITIONAL
ich werde	ich werde	ich würde
du wirst	du werdest	du würdest
er wird	er werde	er würde
wir werden	wir werden	wir würden
ih̄r werdet	ih̄r werdet	ih̄r würdet
sie werden	sie werden	sie würden

b. The auxiliary verb *sein, be, war, gewesen*:

Present: *I am, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
ich bin	ich sei	
du bist	du seiest	sei, be
er ist	er sei	.
wir sind	wir seien	
ih̄r seid	ih̄r seiet	seid, be
sie sind	sie seien	seien Sie, be

Past: *I was, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
ich war	ich wäre
du warst	du wärest
er war	er wäre
wir waren	wir wären
ih̄r war(e)t	ih̄r waret
sie waren	sie wären

PARTICIPLES

Present: *seidend, being*

Perfect: *gewesen, been*

INFINITIVES

sein, to be

gewesen sein, to have been

Perfect: *I have been (I was), etc.*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
ich bin		ich sei	
du bist		du seiest	
er ist		er sei	
wir sind	gewesen	wir seien	
ihr seid		ihr seiet	
sie sind		sie seien	

Past Perfect: *I had been, etc.*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
ich war		ich wäre	
du warst		du wärest	
er war		er wäre	
wir waren	gewesen	wir wären	
ihr wart		ihr wäret	
sie waren		sie wären	

Future: *I shall (should) be, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	CONDITIONAL
ich werde	ich werde	ich würde
du wirst	du werdest	du würdest
er wird	er werde	er würde
wir werden	wir werden	wir würden
ihr werdet	ihr werdet	ihr würdet
sie werden	sie werden	sie würden

Future Perfect: *I shall (should) have been, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	CONDITIONAL
ich werde	ich werde	ich würde
du wirst	du werdest	du würdest
er wird	gewesen	er würde
wir werden	sein	wir würden
ihr werdet	er werde	ihr würdet
sie werden	wir werden	sie würden
	sein	sein

c. The auxiliary verb *werden*, *become*, *ward* or *wurde*, *ge worden*:

Present: *I become (am becoming, do become), etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
ich werde	ich werde	
du wirst	du werdest	werde, <i>become</i>
er wird	er werde	
wir werden	wir werden	
ihr werdet	ihr werdet	werdet, <i>become</i>
sie werden	sie werden	werden Sie, <i>become</i>

Past: *I became (was becoming, did become), etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
ich ward or wurde	ich würde
du wardst or wurdest	du würdest
er ward or wurde	er würde
wir wurden	wir würden
ihr wurdet	ihr würdet
sie wurden	sie würden

PARTICIPLES	INFINITIVES
Present: <i>werdend, becoming</i>	<i>werden, to become</i>
Perfect: <i>geworden, become</i>	<i>geworden sein, to have become</i>

Perfect: *I have become (I became), etc.*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
ich bin	geworden	ich sei	geworden
du bist		du seiest	
er ist		er sei	
wir sind		wir seien	
ihr seid		ihr seiet	
sie sind		sie seien	

Past Perfect: *I had become, etc.*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
ich war	geworden	ich wäre	geworden
du warst		du wärest	
er war		er wäre	
wir waren		wir wären	
ihr wart		ihr wäret	
sie waren		sie wären	

Future: *I shall (should) become, etc.*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	CONDITIONAL
ich werde	werden	ich würde
du wirst		du würdest
er wird		er würde
wir werden		wir würden
ihr werdet		ihr würdet
sie werden		sie würden

Future Perfect: *I shall (should) have become, etc.*

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

CONDITIONAL

ich werde	ich werde	ich würde
du wirst	du werdest	du würdest
er wird	geworden	er würde
wir werden	sein	geworden
ihr werdet	wir werden	er würde
sie werden	ihr werdet	wir würden
	sie werden	ihr würdet
		sie würden



VOCABULARIES
AND
INDEXES

EXPLANATIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

The parts of speech are indicated carefully, and the proper distinction should always be made, but adjectives used adverbially are not given separately. The principal parts of nouns and verbs are not given; where there is any irregularity, either the class is indicated or the grammatical reference is given. The heavy-faced figures refer to the section of the grammar which treats of the word in question. The following abbreviations are used :

<i>acc.</i> accusative	<i>III</i> third class	<i>pl.</i> plural
<i>adj.</i> adjective	<i>i.</i> intransitive	<i>poss.</i> possessive
<i>adv.</i> adverb, adverbial	<i>imp.</i> impersonal	<i>ppl.</i> participial
<i>art.</i> article	<i>ind.</i> indirect	<i>pred.</i> predicative
<i>aux.</i> auxiliary	<i>indecl.</i> indeclinable	<i>pref.</i> prefix
<i>coll.</i> collective	<i>indef.</i> indefinite	<i>prep.</i> preposition
<i>comp.</i> composition	<i>inf.</i> infinitive	<i>pr.</i> pronoun
<i>conj.</i> conjunction	<i>insep.</i> inseparable	<i>pron.</i> pronominal
<i>coörd.</i> coördinating	<i>inter.</i> interrogative	<i>recip.</i> reciprocal
<i>dat.</i> dative	<i>interj.</i> interjection	<i>refl.</i> reflexive
<i>def.</i> definite	<i>irr.</i> irregular	<i>rel.</i> relative
<i>dem.</i> demonstrative	<i>mod.</i> modal	<i>s.</i> strong
<i>dimin.</i> diminutive	<i>mx.</i> mixed	<i>sing.</i> singular
<i>explet.</i> expletive	<i>nom.</i> nominative	<i>sub.</i> subordinating
<i>gen.</i> genitive	<i>num.</i> numeral	<i>subst.</i> substantive
<i>I</i> first class	<i>obj.</i> object	<i>t.</i> transitive
<i>II</i> second class	<i>pers.</i> person, personal	<i>w.</i> weak

GERMAN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARIES, AND WORD-INDEX

ab — an:

ab, *pref.* down, off, away, from.
ablegen, *t. w.* to lay aside.
absteigen, *i. s.* to get down, dismount.
der Abend, evening.
aber, *coörd. conj.* 66, but, however (*postpositive*).
ah!, *interj.* ah! oh! alas!
der Acker, 51, (*cultivated*) field, acre.
der Adler, eagle.
all, *pron. adj.* 258, 259, 263, all; alle Tage, every day; alles, everything.
allerlei, *indecl. adj.* of all kinds.
allein', *adj.* used *pred. only* alone.
allein', *coörd. conj.*, contrasting two ideas, 66, but, yet, still.
als, *conj.* as, like, than; *sub. conj.*, denoting *definite time*, when, as.
also, *adv.* so, thus; *adv. conj.* consequently, therefore.
alt, *adj.* 265, old.
das Alter, age.
der Amerika'ner, 264, American.
an, *prep.* 35, at, alongside of, on, to, up to; *pref.* at, on, to.
anblicken, *t. w.* to look at.
anfangen, *t. s.* to begin, do.
der Aufang, 284, beginning.
angenehm, *adj.* 243, *c.* acceptable, agreeable, pleasant.
anhalten, *i. s.* to stop.
ankommen, *i. s.* 198, 195, to arrive.

a — among

a, *an*, *indef. art.* ein, 31.
to be able, *i.* können, *mod. aux.* 167, 223 ff.
about, *prep.* um, 45; *adv.* ungefähr (approximately), um . . . her (around).
above, *prep.* über, 35; *adv.* oben.
across, *prep.* über, 35.
to be afraid, *i.* sich fürchten, *w.* 267.
after, *prep.* nach, 44; *adv.* nachher; *sub. conj.* nachdem.
afternoon, *der Nachmittag*, 57.
again, *adv.* wieder.
against, *prep.* gegen, wider (opposition), 45.
ago, *prep.* vor, 35.
all, *pron. adj.* all, 258, 259, 263. = whole, ganz, *adj.* 263.
all kinds of, allerlei, *indecl.*
to be allowed, dürfen, *mod. aux.* 167, 223 ff.
almost, *adv.* fast, *beinah*(e).
alone, *adj.* allein', *only predicative*.
alongside, *adv.* nebenher; *prep.* neben.
already, *adv.* schon.
also, *adv.* auch.
although, *sub. conj.* obgleich, obwohl, wenn auch.
always, *adv.* immer.
America, (*daß*) Ame'rifa, 96.
American, *adj.* amerika'nisch, 16, *c.* *i.*; the American, *der Amerika'ner*, 264.
among, *prep.* unter, zwischen, 35.

an: — außer	and — awake(n)
aufsehen , <i>t. s.</i> to look at.	
(an)statt , <i>prep.</i> 242, <i>f.</i> 275, instead of.	and , <i>coörd. conj.</i> und, 66.
anvertrauen , <i>t. w., dat.</i> 241, <i>a, i.</i> to trust, intrust with.	answer , die Antwort, 92.
ander , <i>pron. adj.</i> 259, 261, other; einan'der , <i>indecl. pr.</i> each other.	to answer , <i>i. antworten</i> , <i>w., dat.</i> 243, <i>a, i.</i>
anders , <i>adv.</i> otherwise.	any one , <i>indef. pr.</i> jemand, <i>indecl.</i> irgend einer; not any one (no one), niemand, <i>indecl.</i>
die Antwort , 92, answer.	apparent , <i>adj.</i> scheinbar.
antworten , <i>i. w., dat.</i> 243, <i>a, i.</i> to answer.	apple , der Apfel, 51.
der Apfel , 51, apple.	April , der April', 132.
der April' , 132, April.	arm , der Arm, 57.
die Arbeit , work, labor.	to arrive , <i>i. ankommen</i> , <i>s.</i> 193, 195.
arbeiten , <i>i. w.</i> to work.	as , <i>conj.</i> so; as...as, so...wie (als).
der Arbeiter , 285, workingman.	= cause, da.
arm , <i>adj.</i> 265, poor.	= character, als.
der Arm , 57, arm.	= manner, wie.
der Arzt , II, physician, doctor.	= time, als.
der Atem , I, 245, breath.	as far as , so weit als (wie); bis.
auch , <i>adv.</i> also, too.	to ask , <i>t. :</i>
auf , <i>prep.</i> 35, 128, <i>c.</i> on, upon; <i>pref.</i> on, upon, up; auf und ab , up and down, to and fro.	= demand, verlangen, <i>w., fordern</i> , <i>w.</i>
aufheben , <i>t. s.</i> 174, 209, to raise, pick up, keep.	= question, fragen, <i>w.</i> 244, <i>c.</i>
aufhelfen , <i>i. s., dat.</i> 243, <i>a, i.</i> to help up.	for something, um etwas bitten, <i>s.</i> 193, 195, 244, <i>c.</i>
aufmerksam , <i>adj.</i> attentive.	at , <i>prep.:</i>
aufsitzen , <i>i. s.</i> 193, to sit on, mount.	= alongside, an, 35.
das Auge , <i>mx.</i> 86, eye.	= beside, neben, 35.
der Augenblick , 284, moment.	= near, bei, 44.
der August' , 132, August.	= time of day, um, 45.
aus , <i>prep.</i> 44, out, out of, from; <i>pref.</i> out, out of, from, often denoting completion or thoroughness of action.	= up to, an, 35.
ausruhen , <i>i. w.</i> to rest thoroughly.	= within, in, 35.
außer , <i>prep.</i> 44, out of, besides.	at home , zu Hause.
	at the house of, bei, 44.
	August , der August', 132.
	autumn , der Herbst, 239, <i>f.</i>
	to await , <i>t. erwarten</i> , <i>w.</i>
	to awake(n):
	<i>i. erwachen</i> , <i>aufwachen</i> , <i>w.</i>
	<i>t. erweden</i> , <i>aufweden</i> , <i>w.</i> 290.

Bahn — be-

die Bahn, *w.* 80, pathway, road.
 bald, *adv.* 120, soon.
 das Band, 72, band, ribbon, *pl.* ribbons, fetters.
 bauen, *t. w.* to build.
 der Bauer, *mx.* 87, 285, farmer, peasant.
 der Baum, tree.
 be-, *insep. pref.* 199, 292.
 befehlen, *i. s.*, *dat.* 243, *a, i.*, 266, *i.*, to command.
 begegnen, *i. w.* (*sein*) 914; *dat.* 243, *a, i.*, to meet.
 beginnen, *t. s.* 266, *i.*, to begin.
 behalten, *t. s.* to keep.
 bekannt, *ppl. adj.* known.
 bekommen, *t. s.* 193, 195, to get, receive.
 beklammern, *t. w.* to grieve, trouble; sich beklammern, to trouble one's self.
 bequem, *adj.* convenient, fit, comfortable.
 bereiten, *t. w.* 201, to get ready, prepare.
 berühmt, *ppl. adj.* famous.
 besitzen, *t. s.* 193, 197, to possess.
 besorgen, *t. w.* to take care of, be concerned about.
 bestehen, *i. s.* 188, to subsist, endure.
 besuchen, *t. w.* to visit.
 betrachten, *t. w.* to look at, to examine.
 beweinen, *t. w.* to weep for, bewail, mourn.
 bezahlen, *t. w.* to pay.
 bezagen, *t. w.* to attest, bear witness to.

bad — believe

bad, *adj.* *schlecht*, *schlimm*, *böse*.
 = very bad, intent on harming, *arg.*, 265.
 = naturally bad or harmful, *böse*.
 = evil, offensive to the senses, *übel*.
 = unfavorable, producing or threatening ill, *schlimm*.
 = worthless, not fulfilling its natural functions, *schlecht*.
 to be, *i. sein*, *s.* 188, 241, *b.*:
 = auxiliary, *do not translate*.
 how are you? *wie geht es Ihnen?*
wie befinden Sie sich?
 I am to, etc., *ich soll*, etc. 228.
 that is (i.e.), *das heißt* (d.h.).
 there is:
 locally definite, *es ist*.
 locally indefinite, *es gibt*, *with acc.* 174.
 in natural surroundings, *es gibt*.
 not in natural surroundings, *es ist*.
 inferred consequence of an act or phenomenon, *es gibt*.
 beautiful, *adj.* *schön*.
 because, *sub. conj.* *weil*.
 because of, *prep.* *wegen*, 242, *f.*
 to become, *i. werden*, *s.* 174, 196, 241, *b.*, 266, *i.*.
 bed, *das Bett*, *mx.* 88.
 before, *prep.* *vor*, 85; *adv.* *voran* (place), *vorher* (time); *sub. conj.* *ehe*, *bevor*.
 to begin, *t. and i.* *beginnen*, *s.* 266, *i.*, *anfangen*, *s.*
 behind, *prep.* *hinter*, 85; *adv.* *hinten*, *hinterher*.
 to believe, *t. and i.* *glauben*, *w.*, *dat.* *pers.* 243, *a, i.*, 273.

bei — **Burſch(e)**

bei, *prep.* 44, by (nearness), at, near, with, at the house of.
beide, *pron. adj.* 259, both, two (of two).
das Bein, II, 59, bone, leg.
beifßen, *t. s.* to bite.
der Berg, mountain, hill.
bergen, *t. s.* 266, 1, to conceal, hide.
das Bett, *mx.* 88, bed.
der Bettler, 285, beggar.
biegen, *t. s.* to bend.
bieten, *t. s.* to bid, offer.
billig, *adj.* just, right, reasonable, cheap.
binden, *t. s.* to bind.
bis, *prep.* 45, till, until, up to, as far, as; *sub. conj.* till.
bitten, *t. s.* 193, 195, 244, *c.* to beg, request, ask.
bleiben, *i. s.* (*sein*), 214, 241, *b.* to remain.
bliden, *t. w.* to glance, look.
 der **Blid**, 284, look, view, glimpse, glance.
blind, *adj.* blind.
die Blume, flower.
der Boden, 49, ground, floor.
böf(e), *adj.* bad, malicious, angry.
brechen, *t. s.* to break.
brennen, *t. and i.* *irr. w.* 179, to burn.
das Brettlein, 285, little board.
der Brief, letter.
bringen, *t. irr. w.* 177, 179, to bring.
das Brot, II, 249, bread.
der Bruder, 49, brother.
das Buch, book.
das Bündel, bundle.
der Burſch(e), fellow, boy.

belong — by

to belong, *i.* gehören, *w.*, *dat.* 243, *a.*, *i.*
below, *prep.* unter, 35; *adv.* unten.
to bend, *t.* biegen, *s.*, beugen, *w.* 290.
beside, *prep.* neben, 35, bei, 44.
 besides, *adv.* außerdem, sonst.
between, *prep.* zwischen, 35.
to bind, *t.* binden, *s.*
 to bind together, *t.* zusammenbinden, *s.*
bird, der Vogel, 49.
birthday, der Geburtstag, 57.
to bite, *t.* beifßen, *s.*
black, schwarz, 265.
boat, der Kahn, das Boot, II, 249.
book, das Buch.
both, *pron. adj.* beide, 259.
boy, der Knabe, der Junge.
bread, das Brot, II, 249.
to break, *t. and i.* brechen, *s.*
to bring, *t.* bringen, *irr. w.* 177, 179.
brother, der Bruder, 49.
to build, *t.* bauen, *w.*
 building, das Gebäude, 285.
bundle, das Bündel, 285.
but, *coörd. conj.* 66; aber, simple adversative; allein', contrasting two ideas; sondern, after a negative, denying the first idea and substituting the second for it.
 = except, außer, *dat.*, als.
 nothing but, nichts als.
 = only, nur, erst.
to buy, *t.* kaufen, *w.*
by, *prep.*:
 = agent, von, 44, 236.
 = by way of, über, 35.
 = means, durch, 45, 236.
 = nearness, bei, 44, an, neben, 35.
 = past, an . . . vorüber, 35.

Chor — Dezember

das Chor, 55, 56.

da, *adv.* in the place spoken or thought of, there, here, then ; *in composition with prep.* 137, there-, it, them, etc.

sub. conj. as (causal), since, whereas.

damit, *adv.* therewith, with it, with them ; *sub. conj.* 276, *c*, 3, that, in order that.

darnum, *adv.* on that account, therefore.

davonfliegen, *i. s.* to fly away.

dazn, *adv.* thereto, to it, to that, therefor ; noch dazu, in addition.

das Dach, roof.

danken, *i. w.*, *dat.* 243, *a*, 1, to thank.

dann, *adv.* then (temporal).

dass, *sub. conj.* that.

dein, *poss. adj.* 141 ff., thy, your.

deiner, *der deine*, *der deinige*, *poss. pr.* 141 ff., yours, thine.

denken, *t. and i. irr. w.* 177, 179, 242, *c*, 1, to think.

denn, *coörd. conj.* denoting logical connection, 66, for, then.

der, *def. art.* 28, 46, 239, the.

dem. pr. 137, 143 ff., this, that, he.

rel. pr. 137, 154 ff., who, which, that.

derjenige, *dem. pr.* 146, that, he, the one.

derselbe, *dem. pr.* 146, the same, he.

deshalb, *adv.* therefore, for that reason, that is why.

deswegen, *adv.* therefore, on that account.

deutsch, *adj.* 16, *c*, 1, German.

(**das**) **Deutschland**, 96, Germany.

der Dezember, 132, December.

calf — country

calf, **das Kalb**.

to call, *t. and i.* rufen.

= to name, *t.* heißen, *s.* 189, 244, *d*, nennen, *irr. w.* 179, 241, *b*, 244, *d*.

to be called, heißen, *s.* 189, 241, *b*, to call together, *t.* herbeirufen, *s.*, zusammenrufen, *s.* 189.

can, = to be able, *mod. aux.* können, 167, 223 ff.

to care (for), *i.* für etwas sorgen, sich um etwas kümmern, *w.*

to carry, *t.* tragen, *s.*

castle, **das Schloß**, 2, 284.

to catch, *t.* fangen, *s.*

cave, die Höhle, 285.

chair, der Stuhl.

child, das Kind.

city, die Stadt.

class, die Klasse.

to close, *t.* zuschließen, *w.*, schließen, *s.*

close to, *adj.* nah(e), 120, 243, *c*, 265 ; neben, *prep.* 35.

cold, *adj.* kalt, 265.

to come, *i.* kommen, *s.* 193, 195.

to come in, *i.* hereinkommen, hereintreten, *s.* 174.

comfortable, *adj.* bequem, behaglich.

to command, *t.* befehlen, *dat.* 243, *a*, 1, 266, *i* ; gebieten, *s.*

comrade, der Kamerad', 76.

convenient, *adj.* bequem.

convent, **das Kloster**, 8, *c*, 49.

cottage, **das Häuschen**, 285.

country, **das Land** ; in the country (rural district), auf dem Lande ; in the country (nation), in dem Lande ; to the country (rural district), auf das Land.

<p>Dichter — dürfen</p> <p>der Dichter, 285, poet.</p> <p>dick, adj. thick, big.</p> <p>der Dieb, II, thief.</p> <p>dienen, i. w. 243, a, 1, to serve. der Dienner, 285, servant. der Dienst, service.</p> <p>der Dienstag, 132, Tuesday.</p> <p>diēs, pron. adj. 102, 137, 143 ff., the person or thing just spoken or thought of, this, that, the latter.</p> <p>das Ding, II, 59, thing.</p> <p>doch, conj., denoting the coexistence of two contrasted ideas, yet, though, however, certainly, notwithstanding.</p> <p>der Doktor, mx. 86, doctor (title), physician.</p> <p>der Donnerstag, 132, Thursday.</p> <p>das Dorf, village. das Dörfchen, 285, little village.</p> <p>dort, adv. there, yonder.</p> <p>drei, num. adj. 122, three. dritt, num. adj. 127, third.</p> <p>drücken, t. w. to press.</p> <p>du, pers. pr. 16, c, 184, 188, thou, you.</p> <p>dumm, adj. 265, dull, stupid.</p> <p>dunkel, adj. dark.</p> <p>durch, prep. 45, through, by (means, 236); doubtful pref. 203.</p> <p>durchziehen, t. s. 210, to pull through.</p> <p>dürfen, mod. aux. 167, 223 ff., to have authority or permission, be allowed, may; ich darf nicht, I must not; es darf sein, it may be (there is authority for supposing); er darf nur kommen, he has only to come.</p>	<p>course — drive</p> <p>course, der Kursus, des Kursus, die Kurse; that is a matter of course, das versteht sich, 268.</p> <p>cousin, der Better, mx. 87; die Cousine, Base.</p> <p>cow, die Kuh.</p> <p>to cry, i.: = to weep, weinen, w. = to call out, schreien, rufen, s. 189.</p> <p>to cut, t. schneiden, s. 201.</p> <p>daughter, die Tochter, 49.</p> <p>day, der Tag, 57.</p> <p>dead, adj. tot.</p> <p>dear, adj.: = beloved, lieb. = precious, expensive, teuer.</p> <p>December, der Dezember, 132.</p> <p>to depend upon, sich auf etwas verlassen, s. 267.</p> <p>to die, i. sterben, s. 266, i.</p> <p>diligent, adj. fleißig.</p> <p>dinner, das Mittagessen, 272.</p> <p>to do, t. tun, s. 188; machen, w. = auxiliary, do not translate. how do you do? wie geht es Ihnen? that will do: = is all right, das geht. = is sufficient, das genügt.</p> <p>doctor: = physician, der Arzt, II. = title, der Doktor, mx. 86.</p> <p>dog, der Hund, II, 57.</p> <p>dove, die Taube.</p> <p>down, adv. unten.</p> <p>to drink, t.: of persons, trinken, s. of animals, saufen, s. 174, 209, 210.</p> <p>to drive, i. fahren, s.; t. treiben, s.</p>
--	--

eben — er-

eben, *adv.* even, just, exactly.
ehé, *sub. conj.* before.
eher, *am ehesten*, *adv.* 190, sooner, rather.
ei, *interj.* why!
eigen, *adj.* own, proper, peculiar.
eigentlich, *adj.* proper, exact, real.
das Eigentum, 70, 285, property.
ein, *pron. adj. and num.* 30, 31, 103, 122, 126, 261, a, an, one.
der eine, *indef. pr.* 142, the one.
einer, *indef. pr.* 141, one.
einerlei, *indecl. adj.* of one kind, the same.
einige, *pron. adj.* 102, 259, some, several, a few.
ein'mal, *adv.* once, one time; *auf einmal*, all at once.
einmal', *adv.* once, once upon a time; *nicht einmal*, not even.
eins, *num. adj.* 126, one.
erst, *adv.* once, formerly.
der Einwohner, 285, inhabitant.
elend, *adj.* 3, miserable, wretched.
die Eltern, *pl.* parents.
emp-, *insep. pref.* 199, 292, *form of ent- found in empfangen, empfehlen, empfinden.*
das Ende, *mx.* 88, end.
endlich, *adv.* finally, at last.
der Enkel, grandchild, grandson.
ent-, *insep. pref.* 199, 292.
entfernt, *ppl. adj.* distant.
er, *pers. pr.* 184 ff., he, it.
er-, *insep. pref.* 199, 292.
erbliden, *t. w.* to catch sight of.
erfahren, *t. s.* to learn (by experience), find out.
die Erfahrung, 285, experience.

each — even

each, *pron. adj.* jeder, ein jeder, 258.
each other, *recip. pr.* einan'der, *indecl.*, or translate by the reflexive pronoun.
eagle, der Adler.
ear, das Ohr, *mx.* 88.
early, *adj.* früh.
earth, die Erde.
on earth, *auf Erden*, 81, *auf der Erde*.
easy, *adj.* leicht.
to eat, *t. and i.:*
 of persons, essen, 197.
 of animals, fressen, s.
edge, der Rand, 68.
egg, das Ei.
either:
pr. einer.
conj. either . . . or, entweder . . . oder.
 not . . . either, auch nicht.
else, *adv.* anders, sonst.
 = in another manner, anders.
 = under other circumstances, sonst.
end, das Ende, *mx.* 88.
 = aim, limit, das Ziel, II.
 = purpose, der Zweck.
enough, *adv.* genug, 182.
to enter, eintreten in, *i. s.* 174.
to entertain, *t. unterhal'ten*, *s.* 203; (a guest) bewirten, w.
entire, *adj.* ganz, 263, vollständig.
especial, *adj.* besonder.
 especially, *adv.* besonders.
etc., u. s. w. (und so weiter).
Europe, (das) Euro'pa, 96.
even, *adj. and adv.*, eben, gerade.
 even as, gleich wie.

er — fertig

ergriffen, *t. s.* 201, to seize, take hold of.
 erhalten, *t. s.* to receive, keep.
 erinnern, *t. w.* to remind; sich erinnern, *gen.* 242, *c.* 2, *ii.* 267, *an* (*acc.*), to remember.
 erlösen, *t. w.* to deliver.
 ermüdet, *ppl. adj.* tired out.
 erwarten, *t. w.* to expect, await.
 die Erde, earth; auf Erden, 81, on earth.
 ernten, *t. w.* to reap.
 erst, *num. adj.* 127, first; *adv.* first, not until, only, but, just.
 es, *pers. pr.* 134 ff., it.
 es, *explet.* there; es war einmal', once upon a time there was.
 der Esel, ass, donkey.
 essen, *t. s.* 197, to eat (of persons); see fressen.
 das Essen, 272, dinner, meal, provisions.
 etlich, *pron. adj.* 102, 259, some, several.
 (et)was, *indecl. pr.* 182, something.
 einer, *poss. adj.* 140 ff., your.
 en(e)rer, der en(e)re, der en(e)rige, *poss. pr.* 140 ff., yours.
 (das) Europa, 96, Europe.
 fahren, *t. s.* to go, travel, drive.
 fallen, *t. s.* 191, to fall.
 die Fam'l'ie, 3, family.
 fangen, *t. s.* to catch.
 fast, *adv.* almost, nearly.
 der Februar, 132, February.
 das Feld, field.
 das Fenster, window.
 fertig, *adj.* ready, done, finished.

even — February

even as if, gerade als wenn.
 even if, wenn auch.
 even now, soeben.
 even though, selbst wenn.
 evening, der Abend.
 ever, *adv.* je.
 = always, immer.
 = at any time, jemals.
 forever, auf immer.
 hardly ever, fast nie.
 every, *pron. adj.* jed-, 102, 258; all, 258, 259, 263.
 everybody, *pr.* jedermann.
 everything, *pr.* alles.
 everywhere, *adv.* überall.
 evil, *adj.* übel.
 exact, *adj.* genau.
 example, das Beispiel, II.
 for example (e. g.), zum Beispiel (z. B.).
 except:
 prep. außer, dat.
 conj. außer daß.
 to except, *t.* ausnehmen, *s.* 174, 197.
 to expect, *t.* erwarten, *w.*
 expensive, *adj.* teuer.
 experience, die Erfahrung, 285.
 eye, das Auge, *mx.* 88.
 face, das Gesicht, 251.
 to fall, *t.* fallen, *s.* 191; stürzen, *w.*
 family, die Fam'l'ie, 3.
 famous, *adj.* berühmt.
 far, *adj.* fern, weit.
 farmer, der Bauer, *mx.* 87; der Landmann, 72.
 father, der Vater, 51.
 February, der Februar, 132.

fest — Fuchs

fest, *adj. and pref.* fast, firm.
festhalten, *t. s.* to hold firmly.
festnehmen, *t. s.* 174, 197, to arrest.
finden, *t. s.* 187, to find.
der Fisch, II, fish.
das Fleisch, *no pl.* flesh, meat.
fleißig, *adj.* diligent.
fliegen, *i. s.* to fly.
fliehen, *i. s.* to flee.
fließen, *i. s.* to flow.
der Fluss, 2, 284, river.
die Form, *w.* 80, form, figure.
fort, *pref.* on, along, forward, away.
fortgehen, *i. s.* 174, 189, to go away, go on, continue.
fortlaufen, *i. s.* 174, 189, to run away, escape.
fragen, *t. w.* 244, *c.* 2, to ask (a question).
(das) Frankreich, 96, France.
die Frau, *w.* 80, woman, wife.
das Fräulein, 285, young lady, miss.
frei, *adj.* free, 242, *d.*
freilich, *adv.* certainly, to be sure, of course.
der Freitag, 132, Friday.
fremd, *adj.* 243, *c.* foreign, strange.
der Fremde, 282, stranger.
fressen, *t. s.* to eat (of animals).
die Freude, 285, joy, pleasure.
der Freund, friend.
der Friede(n), I, 245, peace.
frisch, *adj.* fresh, cool.
die Frucht, fruit.
früh, *adj.* early.
der Fuchs, II, fox.

feel — Friday

to feel :

- t. fühlen*, *w.* 167, 225.
- i. sich befinden*, *s.* 267; How do you feel? (How are you?) Wie befinden Sie sich? Wie geht es Ihnen?

to fetch, *t. holen*, *w.*

few, *pron. adj.* wenige, einige.
 a few, ein paar, *indecl.*; einige.

field, *das Feld*; (cultivated) *der Acker*.

to find, *t. finden*, *s.* 167.

fine, *adj.* schön.

finished, *adj.* fertig.

first, *num. adj.* erst, 137.

fish, *der Fisch*, II.

to flatter, *t. schmeicheln*, *w.*, *dat.* 243, *a.* 1.

to flee, *i. fliehen*, *s.*

to flow, *i. fließen*, *s.*

flower, *die Blume*.

to fly, *i. fliegen*, *s.*

to follow, *i. folgen* (*sein*), *w.*, *dat.* 243, *a.* 1.

foot, *der Fuß*, 2, 181.

for, *prep.* für (interest or exchange).
 = purpose, zu, 44.
 in expressions of time untranslatable: for a year, ein Jahr (lang).

coörd. conj. denn, 66.

forest, *der Wald*, 68.

to forget, *t. vergessen*, *s.*

former, *adj.* früher.
 the former, jener, 102, 145, 148;
 (der) erst(er)e.

fox, *der Fuchs*, II.

France, *(das) Frankreich*, 96.

fresh, *adj.* frisch.

Friday, *der Freitag*, 132.

föhlen — geben

föhlen, *t. w.* 167, 225, to feel.

der Föhne(n), I, 245, spark.

für, *prep.* 45, for.

der Fuß, 2, 181, foot; zu Fuß, afoot.

ganz, *adj.* 263, whole, entire.gar, *adv.* fully, quite, entirely, very.

gar nicht, not at all.

der Garten, 51, garden.

ge-, *insep. pref.* 169, 199, 286, 292.
das Gebäude, 285, building.

das Gebirge, (chain of) mountains.

die Geburt, birth.

der Geburtstag, 57, birthday.

gedenken, *i. irr. w.* 179, *gen.* 242, *c.*
1, to think of, be mindful of.

der Gedanke(n), I, 245, thought.

der Gefalle(n), I, 245, favor.

gehören, *i. w., dat.* 243, *a.* 1, to belong to.gelingen, *imp. i. s. (sein)*, 214, *dat.*
243, *a.* 2, to succeed.genau, *adj.* close, accurate, exact.genießen, *t. s.* to enjoy, make use
of.genug, *adv.* 182, enough.das Geratewohl, random, chance;
auf Geratewohl, at random.das Geschäftgebäude, 286, business
building.geschehen, *imp. i. s. (sein)*, 214,
dat. 243, *a.* 1, to happen.der Gesell(e), companion, com-
rade.gesund, *adj.* 265, sound, healthy.

das Gewicht, weight.

gewöhnlich, *adj.* usual, common.geben, *t. s.* 174, to give.

friend — glass

friend, *der* Freund, *die* Freundin,
78, 285.from, *prep.:*

= from the outside of, von, 44.

= from the inside of, aus, 44.

fully, *adv.* gar, voll, völlig.garden, *der* Garten, 51.gate, *das* Tor, II, 56.to gather, *t. sammeln, w.*generally, *adv.* meistens, gewöhn-
lich.gentleman, *der* Herr, 79.genuine, *adj.* echt, wahr.German, *adj.* deutsch.the German, *der* Deutsche, 263.

German (language), Deutsch.

Germany, *(das)* Deutschland, 96.

to get:

= to become, *i. werden, s.* 174,
196, 241, *b.* 286, *1.*= to fetch, *t. holen, w.*= to get possession of, *t. befom-
men, s.* 193, 196.= to receive, *t. :*emphasising the act, empfangen, *s.*emphasising the result or posses-
sion, erhalten, *s.*regardless of source or result, be-
kommen, *s.* 193, 195.to get up, *i. auffießen, s.* 174,
188, *1.*girl, *das* Mädchen, 285.to give, *t. geben, s.* 174.glad, *adj.* froh.to be glad, froh sein, 188, sich
freuen, *w.*gladly, *adv.* gern, 120.glass, *das* Glas, 181.

gegen — Hand

gegen, *prep.* 45, toward, against.
 gehen, *i. s.* 174, 189, to go.
 der Geist, 68, spirit, ghost.
 das Gelb, 71, money.
 gern, *adv.* 120, gladly; *with verb to like to.*
 gestern, *adv.* yesterday.
 glänzen, *i. w.* to be bright, glisten.
 das Glas, glass, 181.
 glauben, *t. w., dat. of person* 243, *a, i.* 273, to believe.
 der Glaube(u), I, 245, belief.
 gleichgültig, *adj.* equal, indifferent, unimportant.
 das Gold, *no pl.* gold.
 der Gott, 68, God.
 der Gottesacker, 51, churchyard.
 Gottlob! *interj.* God be praised!
 graben, *t. s.* to dig.
 der Graben, 51, ditch.
 greifen, *t. s.* 201, to lay hold of, seize.
 der Greis, II, old man.
 groß, *adj.* 120, 265, great, large, big, tall.
 die Großmutter, 49, grandmother.
 der Großvater, 51, grandfather.
 grün, *adj.* green.
 gut, *adj.* 120, 243, *c.* good.

das Haar, II, 56, hair.
 haben, *t. w. aux.* 32, 176, 177, 214, 231, to have.
 der Hafen, 51, harbor, port.
 halb, *adj.* 128, *b.* 263, half.
 halten, *t. s.* to hold; halten für, to consider.
 der Hammer, 51, hammer.
 die Hand, hand.

go — happen

to go, *i. gehen, s.* 174, 189.
 = to drive, *i. fahren, s.*
 = to ride, *i. reiten, s.* 201.
 = to travel, *i. reisen, w.*
 = futurity (I am going to stop), aux. werden, *s.* 218; im Begriff sein (to be on the point of doing something); wollen with eben.
 to go for a walk, einen Spaziergang machen, *w.* spazieren gehen.
 to go out, *i. ausgehen.*
 good, *adj.:*
 = favorable, fulfilling its natural functions, gut, 120.
 = agreeable, referring to the feelings or temperament, wohl, 120.
 grandmother, die Großmutter, 49.
 grape, die Traube.
 grass, das Gras.
 grave, das Grab.
 great, *adj.* groß, 120, 265.
 ground, der Grund, der Boden, 49.
 = reason, der Grund.
 to grow, *i. wachsen, s.*
 = become, *i. werden, s.* 174, 196, 241, *b.* 266, *i.*
 guest, der Gast.

hair, das Haar, II, 56.
 half, die Hälfte.
 adj. halb, 263.
 hand, die Hand.
 to hang:
i. hängen, *s.*
t. hängen, *w.* 290.
 to happen, *imp. i. sich ereignen, w.* geschehen (sein), *s.* 214.

hangen — Himmel

hangen, *i. s.* to hang.

hängen, *t. w.* 290, to (make) hang.

hart, *adj.* 265, hard.

hauen, *t. s.* 189, to hew, strike, cut.

der Haufe(n), I, 245, heap, pile, crowd.

das Haus, house: nach Hause, home- (ward); zu Hause, at home.

das Häuschen, 285, little house, cottage.

heben, *t. s.* 174, 209, to lift, raise.

heissen, *t. and i. s.* 167, 189, 225,

241, b, 244, *d*, to call, name, bid; to be called, named; ich heiße

Johann, my name is John; es heißt, it is said.

helfen, *i. s.* 167, 225; *dat.* 243, *a, I,* 266, *i*, to help.

das Hemd, *mx.* 71, 88, shirt.

her, *pref.* expressing motion toward the speaker or actor; see hin.

herab, *pref.* down, down here.

herabblenden, *i. w.* to look down.

herabsteigen, *i. s.* to get down, dismount.

herankommen, *i. s.* 193, 195, to come up, approach.

herausbringen, *t. irr. w.* 179, to bring out, get out, draw out.

herbeirufen, *t. s.* 189, to call in, summon.

der Herr, 79, master, lord, gentleman, sir, Mr.

das Herz, I, 245, heart; von Herzen, with all one's heart.

heute, *adv.* to-day.

hier, *adv.* here.

der Himmel, heaven, sky.

hard — his

hard, *adj.:*

= burdensome, sauer.

= difficult, schwier.

= firm, hart, 265.

= heavy, schwer.

= insensible to emotion, hart.

= laborious, hart.

= pitiless, unbarmherzig.

= resistant, solid, verb.

= severe, streng.

= taxing one's faculties, schwer.

= violent, heftig.

hardly, *adv.* kaum.

hat, *der* Hut.

to have, *t.* haben, 32, 175, 177.

= to cause, *t.* lassen, *s.* 167, 225.

to have to, *i.* müssen, *mod. aux.* 167, 223 ff.

he, *pers. pr.* er, 134 ff.

to hear, *t.* hören, *w.* 167, 225.

to help, *t.* helfen, *s., dat.* 167, 225, 243, *a, I,* 266, *i.*

help, die Hilfe, 285.

hence, *adv.* von hier.

= therefore, daher, deshalb.

her, *poss. adj.* ihr, 140 ff.

hers, *poss. pr.* ihrer, der ihre, der ihrige, 140 ff.

herself, *refl. pr.* ihrer, sich, 139; intensive selbst, selber, 147.

here, *adv.* hier.

to hide, *t.* verbergen, *s.* 266, *i.*

high, *adj.* hoch, 113, 120, 265.

hill, *der* Berg.

himself, *refl. pr.* seiner, sich, 139; intensive selbst, selber, 147.

his, *poss. adj.* sein, 140 ff.

poss. pr. seiner, der seine, der seinige, 140 ff.

hin — Irrtum

hin, *pref.*, expressing motion away from the speaker or actor; **hin und her**, to and fro.

hinter, *prep.* 35, behind, after. *doubtful pref.* 908.

hoch, *adj.* 118, 120, 265, high, tall. *in die Höhe*, up, aloft.

der Hof, court, yard.

hoffen, *t. and i. w.* to hope.

holen, *t. w.* to fetch, go for.

das Holz, wood.

hölzern, *adj.* 287, wooden.

hören, *t. w.* 167, 225, to hear.

der Hund, II, 57, dog.

hundert, *num. adj.* 126, 2, hundred.

der Hunger, hunger; **hunger haben**, to be hungry.

der Hut, hat.

ich, *pers. pr.* 134 ff., I.

ihre, *pers. pr.* 16, c, 134, 138, you.

ihre, *poss. adj.* 140 ff., her, their.

ihrer, *der ihre*, *der ihrige*, *poss. pr.* 140 ff., hers, theirs.

Ihr, *poss. adj.* 16, b, 140 ff., your.

Ihrer, *der Ihre*, *der Ihrige*, *poss. pr.* 140 ff., yours.

immer, *adv.* always, ever; *with a comparative*, more and more.

in, *prep.* 35, in, into, to.

indem, *sub. conj.*, expressing action of shorter duration, while.

das Interesse, *mx.* 88, interest.

interessant, *adj.* interesting.

irden, *adj.* 287, earthen.

irgend, *adv.* any; *makes a pronoun or adverb more indefinite*: irgend etwas, anything at all.

der Irrtum, 70, error, mistake.

hit — itself

to hit, *t.* **schlagen**, **treffen**, *s.* 195.

to hold, *t.* **halten**, *s.*

to hold together, *t.* **zusammenhalten**.

home(ward), *adv.* **heim**, *nach Hause*.

at home, *zu Hause*.

to hope, *t. hoffen*, *w.*

horse, *das Pferd*, II, 59, 71.

house, *das Haus*.

how, *adv. and conj.* **wie**; *do not translate after lehren, lernen, verstehen, wissen, etc.*

however, *coörd. conj.* **aber** (*post-positive*), 66.

human being, *der Mensch*.

hungry, *adj.* **hungry**.

to be hungry, **hungry sein**, **hunger haben**.

husband, *der Mann*, 68.

I, *pers. pr.* **ich**, 134 ff.

if, *sub. conj.* **wenn**.

ill, *adj.* **krank**, 265.

image, *das Bild*.

in, *into*, *prep.* **in**, 35; **an**, 35.

pref. **herein**, **hinein**.

in front of, *vor*, *prep.* 35.

in order to, *um zu*, 275.

in order that, *damit*, *sub. conj.* *with finite verb* 276, c, 3.

inhabitant, *der Bewohner*, *der Einwohner*, 285.

interesting, *adj.* **interessant**.

it, *pers. pr.* **er**, **sie**, **es**, 134 ff.

its, *poss. adj.* **sein**, **ihre**, 140 ff.;

poss. pr. **seiner**, **ihrer**, *der seine*, *der ihre*, *der seinige*, *der ihrige*, 140 ff.

itself, *refl. pr.* **seiner**, **sich**, 139; *intensive selber*, **selbst**, 147.

ja — Knabe

ja, *adv.* yes; *is also added to a statement with which the person spoken to is expected to agree, why! indeed! you know, certainly.*

das Jahr, II, 56, year.

jämmerlich, *adj.* pitiable, miserable.

der Januar, 132, January.

jeß-, *pron. adj.* 102, 258, each, every; *in the plural replaced by all.*

jen-, *pron. adj.* 102, 145, 148, that, yon, the former.

jetzt, *adv.* now.

(der) Johannes, 93, John.

der Juli, 132, July.

jung, *adj.* 265, young.

der Juni, 132, June.

das Juwel, *mx.* 88, jewel.

der Kahn, boat.

das Kalb, calf.

kalt, *adj.* 265, cold.

der Kamerad', 76, comrade, mate.

(der) Karl, 93, Karl.

kaufen, *t. w.* to buy.

taum, *adv.* scarcely, hardly.

fein, *pron. adj.* 103, 141, no, not any, not one.

keiner, *indef. pr.* 141, no one, none, nothing.

kennen, *t. irr. w.* 179, to know (a person), be acquainted with.

der Kerl, II, fellow.

das Kind, child.

klar, *adj.* clear.

die Klasse, class.

klein, *adj.* small, little.

das Kloster, 8, 49, convent, cloister.

der Knabe, boy.

January — kind

January, *der Januar*, 132.

journey, *die Reise*, 285.

joy, *die Freude*, 285.

July, *der Juli*, 132.

to jump, *i.* *springen*, *s.*

June, *der Juni*, 132.

just:

adj. *gerecht*.

= equitable, billig.

adv. *gerade*, *eben*.

with imperative, *nur*.

= almost, *beinahe*, *fast*.

= exactly, *genau*.

= merely, *bloß*, *nur*.

= this moment, *soeben*, *erst*.

but just, *taum noch*, *nur noch*.

just as, *eben als*, *gerade wie*.

just so, *gerade (eben) so*.

to keep, *t.:*

= cause, *lassen*, *s.*

= celebrate, *feiern*, *w.*

= continue, *fortfahren mit*, *s. s.*, *fortsetzen*, *w.*

= hold, *halten*, *s.*

= preserve, *aufbewahren*, *w.*

= prevent, *abhalten von*, *s.*; *hindern an*, *w.*

= protect, *schützen*, *w.*

= remain, *i.* *bleiben*, *s.* (*sein*), 214, 241, *b.*

= retain, *behalten*, *s.*

= support, *unterhalten*, *s.*

= watch, *bewahren*, *hüten*, *w.*

to kill, *t. töten*, *w.*

kind, *die Art*, *w.*

= variety, *die Sorte*.

all kinds of, *allerlei*, *indecl. adj.*

what kind of, *was für*, 158.

kommen — Leute

kommen, *i. s.* 193, 195, 271, to come.
der König, king.
die Königin, 78, 285, queen.
können, *mod. aux.* 167, 283 ff., *denot.*
ing ability or possibility.
die Kraft, strength, power.
krank, *adj.* 265, ill.
die Kreatur, creature.
kriechen, *i. s.* to creep.
der Kursus, **des Kursus**, **die Kurse**,
course.

laden, *t. s.* to load.
der Laden, 51, shutter, shop.
das Lamm, lamb.
das Land, land; *auf dem Lande*, in
the country.
der Landmann, 72, farmer, peasant, rustic.
der Landsmann, (fellow-)countryman.
lang, *adj.* 265, long.
lassen, *t. s.* 167, 225, to let, leave.
laufen, *i. s.* 174, 189, to run.
laut, *adj.* loud.
leben, *i. w.* to live (have life).
das Leben, 272, life.
lehren, *t. w.* 167, 225, 244, *c.* to
teach.
der Lehrer, 285, teacher.
der Leib, 68, body.
leicht, *adj.* light, easy.
leiden, *i. and t. s.* 201, to suffer, endure, allow.
leihen, *t. s.* to lend.
lernen, *t. w.* 167, 225, to learn.
lesen, *t. s.* to read.
lebt, *adj.* last.
die Leute, *pl.* people.

king — little

king, *der König*.
knee, *das Knie*, II.
knife, *das Messer*.
to know, *t.:*
a thing or fact, *wissen*, *irr. w.* 177,
230.
a person (to be acquainted with),
fennen, *irr. w.* 179.
to know how, *Bescheid wissen*.
to know how to . . ., *verstehen*,
with the infinitive.

land, *das Land*.
large, *adj.* *groß*, 120, 265.
last, *adj.* *letzt*.
at last, *adv.* *zuletzt*, *endlich*.
late, *adj.* *spät*.
the latter, *dies-*, *pron. adj.* 148.
to lay, *t.* *legen*, *w.* 290.
to lay down, *t.* *niederlegen*, *w.*
to lead, *t.* *führen*, *w.* 290.
to learn, *t.:*
= to acquire, *lernen*, *w.* 167, 225.
= to experience, *erfahren*, *s.*
to leave, *t.* *lassen*, *s.*
leg, *das Bein*, II, 59.
to lend, *t.* *leihen*, *s.*
to let, *t.* *lassen*, *s.* 167, 225.
letter, *der Brief*.
to lie, *i.* *liegen*, *s.* 193.
life, *das Leben*, 272.
like, *conj.* *wie*.
to like to, *gern*, *adv. with finite
verb*, 120.
little, *adj.:*
= size, *klein*; or render by a diminutive in *-chen* or *-lein*.
= quantity, *wenig*, *indecl. in the
singular* 258.

Lieb — Wohl

lieb, *adj.* 243, *e.* dear, beloved.
lieben, *t. w.* to love.
lieblos, *adj.* loveless, unkind.
liegen, *i. s.* 193, to lie.
legen, *t. w.* 290, to make lie, lay,
 put, place.
links, *adj.* left.
links, *adv.* to the left, on the left
 hand.
loben, *t. w.* to praise.
der Löffel, spoon, ladle.
der Lohn, reward, wages.
lügen, *i. s.* 209, to lie, tell a falsehood.

machen, *t. w.* 167, 225, to make, do ;
 sich auf den Weg machen, to start
 on the way, set out.
das Mädchen, 285, maiden, girl.
der Mai, 182, May.
manch, *pron. adj.* 102, 258, 259,
 many a.
der Mangel, 51, want, lack, scar-
 city.
der Mann, 68, 72, man, husband.
man, *indef. indecl. pr.* 237, *a.* one,
 a person, they, people.
der Mantel, 51, mantle, cloak.
die Mark, 181, mark (23.8 f.).
der März, 182, March.
mein, *poss. adj.* 140 ff., my.
 meiner, der meine, der meinige,
 poss. *pr.* 140 ff., mine.
meistens, *adv.* most, mostly, gener-
 ally.
der Meister, 285, master.
die Menge, 182, multitude, quantity,
 great number.
der Mensch, man (human being).
die Milch, milk.

live — miss

to live, *i.:*
 = to exist, be alive, leben, *w.*
 = to dwell, wohnen, *w.*
to load, *t. laden*, *s.*
to lock, *t. schließen*, *s.*
long, *adj.* lang, 285.
 for a long time, lang(e), *adv.*,
 lange Zeit, 244, *g.*; see for.
to look for, *t. suchen*, *w.*
to lose, *t. verlieren*, *s.*
to love, *t. lieben*, *w.*

to make, *t. machen*, *w.*
 = cause, lassen, *s.*
man :
 = male being, der Mann, 68, 72.
 = human being, der Mensch.
many, *pron. adj.* viele, 102, 258, 259.
 many a, manch, 102, 258, 259.
March, der März, 182.
mark, die Mark, *w.* 181, 255.
master, der Herr, 79.
may, *mod. aux.* 167, 223 ff. :
 = authority, permission, dürfen.
 = likeliness, mögen.
 = possibility, können.
May, der Mai, 182.
meat, das Fleisch, II, *no pl.*
to meet, *t. begegnen*, *w.*, *dat.* 243, *a.* ;
 treffen, *s.* 195.
 = to assemble, *i. zusammenkom-*
men, *s.* 193, 195.
 = to fetch, *t. abholen*, *w.*
milk, die Milch.
mine, *poss. pr.* meiner, der meine,
 der meinige, 140 ff.
miss, das Fräulein, 285.

minute — Natur

die Minute, 128, *d.*, minute.
 mit, *prep.* 44, 236, with (company or means).
pref. together, also, in company, at the same time.
 mitnehmen, *t. s.* 174, 197, to take along.
 der Mittwoch, 92, 132, Wednesday.
 mögen, *mod. aux.* 167, 223 ff., denoting inclination or likeliness.
 der Mond, 8, 247, moon.
 der Monat, month.
 der Montag, 132, Monday.
 der Morgen, morning.
 morgen, *adv.* to-morrow.
 die Mühe, pains, trouble, labor.
 mühsam, *adj.* painful, laborious, tedious.
 müssen, *mod. aux.* 167, 223 ff., denoting necessity.
 die Mutter, 49, mother.

nah, *prep.* 44, 128, *c.*, after, to, toward, according to.
pref. behind, after, afterward.
 nachdem, *sub. conj.* after.
 nachdenken, *i. irr. w.* 179, to reflect, ponder, muse, consider, über (*acc.*).
 nachher, *adv.* afterward.
 der Nachkomme, descendant, successor.
 die Nacht, night.
 der Nagel, 51, nail.
 nah(e), *adj.* 120, 243, *c.*, 265, near, close to.
 der Nachbar, *mx.* 87, neighbor.
 der Name, I, 245, name.
 die Natur', nature.

moment — no

moment, der Augenblick, 284.
 money, das Gelb.
 moon, der Mond, 247.
 Monday, der Montag, 132.
 month, der Monat.
 morning, der Morgen.
 mostly, *adv.* meistens.
 mother, die Mutter, 49.
 mountain, der Berg.
 mountains (*coll.*), das Gebirge, 285.
 Mr., der Herr, 79.
 much:
 = degree, sehr, *adv.* 120.
 = quantity, viel, *adj.* and *adv.* *indecl. in the singular*, 102, 120, 182, 258, 259.
 must, *mod. aux.* müssen, 167, 223 ff.
 my, *poss. adj.* mein, 140 ff.
 myself, *refl. pr.* meiner, mir, mich, 139; intensive selbst, selber, 147.
 name, der Name, I, 245; my name is John, mein Name ist Johann, ich heiße Johann, 241, *b.*, 2.
 near, *adj.* nah, 120; *prep.* bei, 44.
 to need, *t.* brauchen, *w.*
 neighbor, der Nachbar, *mx.* 87.
 never, *adv.* nie.
 = at no time, niemals.
 = never again (*generally of future time only*), nimmer.
 new, *adj.* neu.
 next, *adj.* nächst, *see* nah(e); *prep.* neben, 35.
 night, die Nacht.
 no, *adj.* kein, 103, 141; *adv.* nein.
 nobody, *pr.* niemand, *indecl.*
 none, *pr.* keiner, 141.

neben — oft

neben, *prep.* 35, by, near, by the side of.

nebenherlaufen, *i. s.* 174, 189, to run alongside.

nehmen, *t. s.* 174, 197, to take.

nennen, *t. irr. w.* 167, 179, 241, *b*, 244, *d*, to name, call.

neu, *adj.* new.

nicht, *adv.* not; *gar nicht*, not at all.

nichts, *indecl. pr.* nothing; *gar nichts*, nothing at all.

niemand, *indecl. pr.* nobody, no one, none.

nieder, *adj. and pref.* low, down.

sich niedersetzen, 233, 290, to sit down.

noch, *adv.* yet, as yet, still (temporal), more, in addition.

der November, 132, November.

die Null, *w.* 122, 255, naught, cipher, zero.

nun, *adv.* now, at present; often denoting relation of events rather than point of time.

nut, *adv.* only, but, scarcely.

der Nüßbaum, nut-tree.

ob, *sub. conj.* whether, if.

obgleich, *sub. conj.* although.

obwohl, *sub. conj.* although.

oben, *adv.* above, on high, aloft, up stairs, overhead, up.

der Od(e), ox.

der Odem, I, 245, breath.

oder, *coörd. conj.* 66, or.

der Ofen, 49, oven, stove.

offen, *adj.* open.

öffnen, *t. w.* to open.

oft, *adv.* 119, often.

not — once

not, *adv.* *nicht*; *nicht* combines with certain unemphatic pronouns and adverbs in the same clause: *nicht ein* = *lein*, *nicht etwas* = *nichts*, *nicht je* = *nie*, *nicht jemand* = *niemand*, *nicht immer* = *nimmer*.

not at all, *gar nicht*.

nothing, *pr.* *nichts*, *indecl.*

nothing at all, *gar nichts*.

nothing but, *nichts als*.

noise, *das Geräusch*, der Lärm.

November, *der November*, 132.

now, *adv.* *jetzt*, *temporal*; *nun*, often without temporal force, denoting rather the relation of events.

October, *der Oktober*, 132.

of, generally rendered by the genitive; after expressions of quantity replaced by an appositive construction, 182; with certain proper nouns rendered by *von*, 98, *a*; after numerals by either the genitive or *von*; denoting material, *aus*, *von*, 44.

to offer, *t. bieten*, *s.*

officer, *der Offizier*, II.

often, *adv.* *oft*, 119.

old, *adj.* *alt*, 265.

on, *prep.*:

= *on top*, *auf*, 35.

= *alongside*, *an*, 35.

on account of, *wegen*, 242, *f.*

once, *adv.* *einst*, *einmal*.

= *one time*, *ein'mal*.

= *once upon a time*, *einmal'*.

ohne — plötzlich

ohne, prep. 45, 275, without.
 oho! interj. oho! oh!
 das Ohr, m.x. 88, ear.
 der Oktober, 132, October.
 der Onkel, uncle.
 der Ort, 68, place, region, locality.

one — person

one, indef. art. ein, 30.
 indef. pr. man.
 num. adj. ein, 126.
 pr. einer, 141.
 after an adj. untranslatable.
 the one (numerical), der eine, 142;
 (demonstrative), derjenige, 146.
 only, adj. einzig.
 adv. = exclusion, nur.
 = time, erst.

to open, t. öffnen, aufmachen, w.

or, coörd. conj. oder, 66.

other:

= different, ander, pron. adj. 259.
 = in addition, noch, adv.

our, poss. adj. unser, 140 ff.

ours, poss. pr. uns(e)r, der un-
 (e)r, der uns(e)rige, 140 ff.

ourselves, refl. pr. uns, uns, 139;
 intensive selbst, selber, 147.

out (of), prep. aus, 44.

pref. aus, heraus, hinaus.

over, prep. über, 35.

own, adj. eigen.

ox, der Ochse(e).

das Paar, II, 56, pair; ein paar,
 indecl. adj. a few, some.

das Papier', paper.

der Park, park.

der Pfennig, 181, penny.

das Pferd, II, 71, horse.

der Pferdedieb, II, horse-thief.

der Pferdemarkt, horse-bazaar.

pflanzen, t. w. to plant.

die Pflicht, duty.

das Pfund, II, 71, 181, pound.

der Platz, place.

plötzlich, adj. sudden.

pair, das Paar, II, 56.

parents (pl.), die Eltern.

park, der Park.

to pay, t. bezahlen, w.

peasant, der Bauer, m.x. 87.

penny, der Pfennig.

people:

= nation, das Volk.

= persons, die Leute, die Menschen.

perhaps, adv. vielleicht.

to have permission, dürfen, mod.

aux. 167, 223 ff.

person, die Person.

Post — reden

die Post, *w.* 80, post (mail).
 prächtig, *adj.* splendid, magnificent.
 der Prinz, prince.
 die Prinzessin, 78, 285, princess.
 der Professor, *mx.* 86, professor.
 prüfen, *t. w.* to prove, try, examine.

physician — receive

physician, *der Arzt*, II.
 picture, *das Bild*.
 piece, *das Stück*, II, 59.
 to place, *see* to put.
 to plant, *t. pflanzen*, *w.*
 to play, *t. and i. spielen*, *w.*
 pleasant, *adj.* angenehm.
 pleasure, *die Freude*, 285; *das Vergnügen*, 272.
 poet, *der Dichter*, 285; *der Poet*, 76.
 poor, *adj.* arm, 265; schlecht, ärmlich.
 possible, *adj.* möglich.
 to be possible, können, *mod. aux.* 187, 223 ff.
 to praise, *t. loben*, *w.*, preisen, *s.*.
 probably, *adv.* wohl, 279, *b.*
 professor, *der Professor*, *mx.* 86.
 to promise, *t. versprechen*, *s.*
 proper, *adj.* eigentlich, eigen.
 to be proper, *i. sich schicken*, *w.*,
imp., *refl.* 268.

property, *das Eigentum*, 285.

to pull, *t. ziehen*, *s.* 210.

to put, *t. causative* 290:

- = to make lie, legen, *w.*
- = to make sit, setzen, *w.*
- = to make stand, stellen, *w.*
- through an opening, stecken, *w.*

to quarrel, *i. streiten*, *s.* 201.

to raise, *t. heben*, *s.* 174, 209.

to reach, *t. erreichen*, *w.* 292.

to read, *t. lesen*, *s.*

ready, *adj.* bereit, fertig.

real, *adj.* eigentlich.

to receive, *t. empfangen* (*act of receiving*), bekommen, *s.* 193, 197.

= obtain, erhalten, *s.* (*emphasizing result or possession*).

der Rand, 68, edge, verge.

raten, *t. s., dat.* 243, *a, i.* to guess,
 advise.

der Rat, 284, council, advice, con-
 sultation.

recht, *adj.* right.

das Recht, II, 59, right.

rechts, *adv.* to (on) the right.
 reden, *i. w.* to speak, talk.

reiben — schließen

reiben, *t. s.* to rub.
 reich, *adj.* rich.
 das Reich, II, 59, realm, kingdom, empire.
 der Reichtum, 68, 70, 285, riches, wealth.
 reif, *adj.* ripe, mature.
 reisen, *i. w.* to journey, travel.
 die Reise, 285, journey.
 reißen, *t. s.* to tear, pull.
 reiten, *t. and i. s.* 201, to ride.
 rennen, *i. irr. w.* 179, to run.
 richten, *t. w.* to raise, lift up; sich richten, to accommodate one's self.
 riechen, *t. and i. s.* to smell.
 ringen, *i. s.* to struggle, wrestle, strive.
 der Rock, coat, gown, skirt.
 die Rose, rose.
 der Rücken, back.
 der Rückweg, way back, return.
 rufen, *t. and i. s.* 189, to call, shout, cry.

die Sache, thing, object, affair.
 sagen, *t. and i. w.* to say, tell.
 der Same(n), I, 245, seed.
 sammeln, *t. w.* to gather, collect.
 der Samstag, 132, Saturday.
 der Sattel, 51, saddle.
 sauer, *adj.* sour, hard.
 saufen, *t. and i. s.* 174, 209, 210, to drink (of animals).
 der Schade(n), I, 245, damage, injury.
 scheinen, *i. s.* to shine, seem, appear, 241, b.
 scheinbar, *adj.* seeming, apparent.
 schicken, *t. w.* to send.
 schießen, *t. s.* to shoot, to fire.

red — send

red, *adj.* rot, 265.
 to remain, *i.* bleiben (sein) *s.*, 214, 241, b.
 to remember, *t.* sich erinnern, *w.*, *refl.*, an (acc.) or gen. 242, c, 2.
 to reply, *i.* antworten, erwidern, *w.*, *dat.* of person 243, a, 1; auf with acc. of thing.
 Rhine, der Rhein, 98.
 rich, *adj.* reich.
 to ride, *t. and i.* reiten, *s.* 201.
 to ring, *i.* Klingen, *s.*
 river, der Fluß, 9.
 road, der Weg.
 room, das Zimmer.
 rose, die Rose.
 round, *prep.* um, 45.
 to run, *i.* laufen, *s.* 174, 189; rennen (of animate objects only), *irr. w.* 179.
 to run away, *i.* fortlaufen.

the same, *pron. adj.* derselbe, 148.
 Saturday, der Sonnabend, der Samstag, 132.
 to save, *t.* retten, *w.*
 to say, *t.* sagen, *w.*; when direct discourse follows, the ind. obj. is governed by zu.
 school, die Schule.
 scholar, der Schüler, 285.
 to see, *t.* sehen, *s.* 187, 225.
 to seem, *i.* scheinen, *s.* 241, b.
 to seize, *t.* ergreifen, *s.* 201.
 self, *pr.* selbst, selber, *indecl.* 147.
 to sell, *t.* verkaufen, *w.*
 to send, *t.* schicken, *w.*, senden, *irr. w.* 179.

Schiff — sein

das Schiff, II, 59, ship, vessel.
schlafen, *i. s.* to sleep.
schlagen, *t. s.* to strike, beat, hit.
schlecht, *adj.* bad, poor.
schließen, *t. s.* to close, shut, lock.
das Schloß, 2, 284, lock, castle.
der Schnabel, 51, bill, beak.
schneiden, *t. s.* 201, to cut.
schnell, *adj.* swift, fast, quick.
schön, *adv.* already.
schön, *adj.* beautiful, fine, nice.
schrecken, *i. s.* 187, to be frightened.
schrecken, *t. w.* 290, to frighten.
schreiben, *t. and i. s.* to write.
schreien, *i. s.* to cry, to shout.
der Schuh, 57, shoe.
die Schuld, *w.* 80, 285, debt, obligation.
die Schule, school.
der Schüler, 285, scholar.
die Schulter, shoulder.
das Schüsselchen, 285, small dish.
schütten, *t. w.* to pour, spill.
schwach, *adj.* 265, weak, feeble.
der Schwager, 51, brother-in-law.
schwarz, *adj.* 285, black.
schweigen, *i. s.* to be silent.
die Schweiz, 97, Switzerland.
schwer, *adj.* heavy, hard, severe.
die Schwester, sister.
schwimmen, *i. s.* 266, 1, to swim.
schwingen, *t. and i. s.* to swing, flourish.
der See, *mx.* 87, lake.
sehen, *t. s.* 187, 225, to see.
sehr, *adv.* 120, very, much.
sein, *poss. adj.* 140 ff., his, its.
sein, *der seine, der seinige, poss.*
pr. 140 ff., his, its.

September — some

September, *der September*, 132.
to serve, *t.* dienen, *w.*, *dat.* 243, *a. i.*
several, *pron. adj.* einige, etliche,
mehrere, 259.
shall, *aux.:*
= futurity, werben, *s.* 174, 175,
196, 218.
= determination of some one not
the subject, sollen, *mod. aux.*
167, 223 ff.
she, *pers. pr. sie*, 134 ff.
shoe, *der Schuh*, 57.
to shoot, *t.* schießen, *s.*
short, *adj.* kurz, 265.
to show, *t.* zeigen, *w.*
silent, *adj.* schweigend.
to be silent, *i.* schweigen, *s.*
since, *prep.* seit, *dat.*
sub. conj. = time, seit(dem).
= cause, da.
to sing, *i.* singen, *s.*
to sink, *i.* sinken, *s.*
sinner, *der Sünder*, 285.
sister, *die Schwester*.
to sit, *i.* sitzen, *s.* 183, 197.
to sleep, *i.* schlafen, *s.*
to fall asleep, *i.* einschlafen, *s.*
small, *adj.* klein; or render by a
dimin. in -chen or -lein, 285.
to smell, *t.* riechen, *s.*
to snap at, *i.* schnappen nach, *w.*
so, *adv.* so, also; *conj.* so.
so that, *sub. conj.* damit, 276, e, 3.
soldier, *der Soldat*, 76.
some:
singular: etwas, indecl. *pr.*, fol-
lowed by noun in apposition 182;
or render by the omission of the
article 240.

sein — sondern

sein, *i. s.* 32, 175, 188, 214, 235, *b.* 238, 241, *b.* to be.
seit, *prep.* 44, since.
selber, selbst, *indecl. pr.* 147, self.
selten, *adj.* rare, seldom.
seltsam, *adj.* singular, strange, odd.
senden, *t. irr. w.* 179, to send.
die Sense, scythe.
der September, 132, September.
sezgen, *t. w.* 290, *see* *sitzen*, to make
 sit, set, place, put; **sich sezgen**,
 233, to seat one's self, sit down.
sich, *refl. pr.* 139, himself, herself,
 itself, themselves.
sie, *pers. pr.* 134 ff., she, they.
Sie, *pers. pr.* 16, *b.* 134 ff., 138, you.
sich(e)! *interj.* see! behold!
das Silber, *no pl.* silver.
singen, *t. and i. s.* to sing.
sinken, *i. s.* to sink.
sinken, *t. w.* 290, to (make) sink.
sitzen, *i. s.* 193, 197, to sit.
sezgen, *t. w.* 290, to make sit, set,
 place, put.
so, *adv.* so, thus, in this manner.
sogar, *adv.* even.
fogleich, *adv.* immediately, in-
 stantly, at once.
der Sohn, II, son.
solch, *pron. adj.* 102, 148, 259, such.
füllen, *mod. aux.* 167, 228 ff., denot-
 ing the will, intention, or claim
 of some one not the subject, hence
 often obligation or hearsay.
der Sommer, 239, *f.* summer.
sondern, *coörd. conj.* 68, but; gener-
 ally after a negative, when the
 first statement is denied and the
 second substituted for it.

some — summer

some:
 plural: einige, *pron. adj.* 259; or
 render by the omission of the
 article 240.
somebody, *some one*, *pr.* (irgend)
 einer, 141, jemand, *indecl.*
something, *pr.* etwas, *indecl.*
son, *der Sohn*, II.
soon, *adv.* bald, 120.
sour, *adj.* sauer.
sparrow, *der Sperling*, *der Spaß*.
to speak, *i.* sprechen, *s.*, reden, *w.*
to spring, *i.* springen, *s.*
spring, *der Frühling*, 239, *f.*
stable, *der Stall*.
to stand, *i.* stehen, *s.* 174, 188.
state, *der Staat*, *mx.* 87.
statue, *das Standbild*.
to stay, *i.* bleiben (sein), *s.* 214, 241, *b.*
to steal, *t.* stehlen, *s.* 266, *1.*
to step, *i.* treten, *s.* 174.
stick, *der Stab*.
still, *adj.*:
 = quiet, still.
 = silent, schweigend.
adv. = time, noch.
 = anyway, doch.
street, *die Straße*.
to strike, *t.* schlagen, treffen, *s.* 195.
strong, *adj.* stark, 265.
to study, *t.* studie'ren, *w.* 189.
 study(room), *das Studier'zimmer*.
student, *der Student'*, 76.
to succeed, *i.* gelingen (sein), *s.*, *imp.*
 214, *dat.* 243, *a.* 2.
such, *pron. adj.* solch, 102, 148, 259.
sudden, *adj.* plötzlich.
to suffer, *t. and i.* leiden, *s.* 201.
summer, *der Sommer*, 239, *f.*

Sonnabend — streiten
der Sonnabend, 132, Saturday.
der Sonntag, 132, Sunday.
spät, *adj.* late.
spazieren, *i. w.* 169, to take a walk.
 der Spazierritt, 284, pleasure ride.
der Spatz, sparrow.
spielen, *t. and i. w.* to play.
der Spötter, 285, mocker, scoffer.
sprechen, *t. and i. s.* to speak, say.
 das Sprichwort, proverb.
springen, *i. s.* to leap, spring, jump.
der Staat, *mx.* 87, state.
 die Vereinigten Staaten, the United States.
der Stab, staff, stick.
die Stadt, town, city.
der Stall, stall, stable.
das Standbild, statue.
die Stange, pole, stake, stick.
stark, *adj.* 285, strong, powerful.
 die Stärke, 285, strength, power, force.
stehen, *i. s.* 174, 188, to stand.
 stellen, *t. w.* 290, to make stand, put, place.
stehlen, *t. s.* 266, *i.* to steal.
steigen, *i. s.* to rise, ascend, mount.
sterben, *i. s.* 266, *i.* to die.
der Stern, star.
die Stimme, voice.
stolz, *adj.* proud.
stoßen, *t. s.* 174, *d.* 189, to push.
die Strafe, 285, punishment; *zur Strafe ziehen*, to punish.
der Strahl, *mx.* 87, beam, ray, flash.
die Straße, way, road, street.
die Strecke, 285, tract, stretch, way.
streiten, *t. and i. s.* 201, to fight, struggle, quarrel.

Sunday — then
Sunday, *der Sonntag*, 132.
to swim, *i.* schwimmen, *s.* 266, *i.*
to swing, *i.* schwingen, *s.*
Switzerland, *die Schweiz*, 97.
table, *der Tisch*.
to take, *t. :*
 = to remove, nehmen, *s.* 174, 197.
 = to carry, tragen, *s.*
 = to bring, bringen, *irr. w.* 177, 179.
 to take a walk, *i.* spazieren gehen, *s.* 174, 189.
 to take away, *t. fort- or wegnehmen*.
 to take off, *t.* abnehmen.
tall, *adj.* lang, 265; groß, 120, 285; hoch, 113, 120, 265.
to teach, *t.* lehren, *w.* 167, 225, 244, *c.* teacher, *der Lehrer*, 285.
to tear, *t.* reißen, *s.*
to tell, *t. :*
 = to say, sagen, *w.*
 = to relate, erzählen, *w.*
 = to command, befehlen, *s., dat.* 243, *a, i.* 266, *i.*; heißen, *s.* 189.
than, *conj.* als.
to thank, *t.* danken, *w., dat.* 243, *a, i.*
that, *sub. conj.* daß.
 dem. pron. adj. der, jen-, derjenige, 137, 143 ff., 148.
 rel. pr. der, welch-, 137, 154 ff.
the, *def. art.* der, 28, 46, 289.
their, *poss. adj.* ihr, 140 ff.
 theirs, *poss. pr.* ihrer, der ihre, der ihrige, 140 ff.
themselves, *refl. pr.* ihrer, sich, 139; intensive selbst, selber, 147.
then, *adv. :*
 = time, dann, damals.
 = logical connection, denn.

Stück — treu

das **Stück**, II, 59, 181, piece.
 der **Student**, 76, student.
 studie'ren, *t. and i. w.* 169, to study.
 das **Studier'zimmer**, study-room.
 der **Stuhl**, chair, stool, seat.
 die **Stunde**, 285, hour.
 der **Sünder**, 285, sinner.
 die **Suppe**, soup.

der **Tag**, 57, day.
 täglich, *adj.* daily.
 das **Tal**, valley, dale.
 die **Tat**, *w.* 80, deed.
 die **Taube**, dove.
 tausend, *num. adj.* 126, 2, thousand.
 tener, *adj.* 243, *e.* dear, precious, expensive, costly.
 das **Tier**, II, 56, animal, beast.
 der **Tisch**, table; bei **Tische**, at the table.
 das **Tischtuch**, table-cloth.
 die **Tochter**, 49, daughter.
 der **Tod**, des **Todes**, [die **Todesfalle**], death.
 tot, *adj.* dead.
 das **Totenbett**, *mx.* 88, death-bed.
 der **Totengräber**, 285, grave-digger.
 der **Totenkopf**, death's-head, skull.
 töten, *t. w.* 290, to kill.
 tragen, *t. s.* to carry, bear, wear.
 die **Traube**, grape.
 traurig, *adj.* 287, sad, sorrowful.
 treffen, *t. s.* 195, to hit, strike, meet.
 treiben, *t. s.* to drive.
 treten, *i. s.* 174, to tread, set foot on, step on (into).
 tren, *adj.* 243, *e.* faithful, trusty.

there — time

there, *adv.* da, dort; *expl.* es.
 therefor, *adv.* dafür, 187.
 therefore, *adv.* daher (*emphasising the premises*).
 = consequently (*showing logical connection*), folglich.
 = for that reason (*denoting the active cause*), darum.
 = on that account (*considering circumstances and active cause*), deswegen.
 = that is why (*in consideration of attendant circumstances*), deshalb.
 = then (*emphasizing the conclusion*), also.
 they, *pers. pr.* sie, 184 ff.
 thief, der **Dieb**, II.
 thine, *poss. pr.* deiner, der **beine**, der **deinige**, 140 ff.
 to think, *t. and i.:*
 = mental assertion, denken, *irr. w.* 179; *gen.* 242, *c.* 1, or an (*acc.*).
 = belief, glauben, *w.*
 = opinion, meinen, *w.*
 this, *pron. adj.* der, dies, 187, 143 ff.
 thou, *pers. pr.* du, 16, 184 ff.
 though, *sub. conj.* obgleich, obwohl, wenn auch.
 through, *prep.* durch, 45.
 to throw, *t.* werfen, *s.* 266, 1.
 to throw away, *t.* weg- or fort- werfen.
 Thursday, der **Donnerstag**, 188.
 thus, *adv.* so, also.
 thy, *poss. adj.* dein, 140 ff.
 thyself, *refl. pr.* deiner, dir, dich, 189; *intensive* selbst, selber, 147.
 to tie, *t.* binden, *s.*
 time, die **Zeit**.

trinken — Unverstand

trinken, *t. s.* to drink (of persons).

trotz, *prep.* 242, *f.* in spite of.

das Tuch, 72, cloth.

tan, *t. s.* 188, to do, make.

das Übel, evil, ill.

über, *prep.* 35, over, above, about.

doubtful pref. 203.

überall, *adv.* everywhere.

überflüssig, *adj.* overflowing, superfluous.

übersetzen, *t. w.* to translate.

die Übung, 285, exercise, practice.

die Uhr, *w.* 80, 128, 181, clock, watch, o'clock.

um, *prep.* 45, about, round, at (time).

with inf. 275, in order to.

doubtful pref. 203.

um...willen, *prep.* 242, *f.* for the sake of.

umher, *pref.* around, about.

umhergehen, *i. s.* 174, 189, to go about.

umherreisen, *i. w.* to travel about.

und, *coörd. conj.* 66, and.

ungefähr, *adv.* about, nearly, almost; von ungefähr, by chance, accidentally.

die Universität, university.

unser, *poss. adj.* 140 ff., our.

uns(e)rer, der uns(e)re, der uns(e)lige, *poss. pr.* 140 ff., ours.

unten, *adv.* below, beneath, underneath, down.

unter, *prep.* 35, under, below, among. *doubtful pref.* 203.

der Untertan, *mx.* 87, subject.

der Unverstand, want of judgment, senselessness.

to — usual

to, *prep.:*

= destination:

person or single object, *zu*, 44.

locality, *nach*, 44.

public place, *in*, 35.

place of business or amusement, *auf*, 35.

= alongside, *an*, 35.

= as far as, up to, *bis*, 45, *zu*, 44.

= within, *in*, 35.

sign of inf. *zu*, 167.

to-day, *adv.* heute.

to-morrow, *adv.* morgen.

too, *adv.* auch.

= excessive, *zu*.

toward, *prep.* *nach*, 44; *gegen*, 45.

town, die Stadt.

to travel, *i. reisen*, wandern, *w.*

traveler, *der Reisende*, 262.

to tread, *i. treten*, *s.* 174.

tree, *der Baum*.

to trust, *t. trauen*, *w.*, *dat.* 243, *a.*, *i.*

to try, *t. versuchen*, *w.*

Tuesday, *der Dienstag*, 132.

two, *num. adj.* *zwei*, 122; (of two), *beide*, *pron. adj.* 269.

uncle, *der Onkel*.

under, *prep.* unter, 35.

unhappy, *adj.* unglücklich.

the United States, *pl.* die Vereinigten Staaten, *mx.* 87.

university, die Universität.

to untie, *t. losbinden*, *s.*

until, *prep. and sub. conj.* *bis*, 45.

up, *adv.* *auf*, *hinauf*, *herauf*, *oben*.

up to, *prep.* *bis*, 45; *bis an*, 35.

upon, *prep.* *auf*, 35.

usual, *adj.* gewöhnlich.

Vater — von

der **Vater**, 51, father.ver-, *insep. pref.* 199, 292.verachten, *t. w.* to despise, scorn.
verderben, *t. and i. s.* to spoil,
ruin, destroy.verdienen, *t. w.* to gain, earn, de-
serve.verdriicken, *t. s.* to grieve, vex,
trouble, 242, c, 2.**die Vereinigten Staaten**, *pl.* the
United States.vergänglich, *adj.* transitory, perish-
able.vergebens, *adv.* in vain.vergeblich, *adj.* vain, useless.vergehen, *i. s.* 174, 189, to pass
away, elapse.vergeßen, *t. s.* to forget, 242,
c, 1.verkaufen, *t. w.* to sell.sich verlassen, *auf (acc.)*, *refl.* 267, to
rely or depend upon, trust.verlieren, *t. s.* to lose.versetzen, *t. and i. w.* to remove,
shift, rejoin, reply.versprechen, *t. s.* to promise; sich
versprechen, *refl.* 267, to make a
mistake in speaking.verstehen, *t. s.* 174, 188, to under-
stand.der **Vetter**, *mx.* 87, cousin.viel, *pron. adj.* 102, 258, 259, *indecl.*
in sing. much, many.vielleicht, *adv.* perhaps.vier, *num. adj.* 122, four.das **Viertel**, quarter, 128, c.der **Vogel**, 49, bird.von, *prep.* 44, from, of, by (agent
236).

vain — voice

vain, *adj.* eitel.

= useless, vergeblich.

in vain, vergebens.

valley, das Tal.**very**, *adv.* sehr, 120, gar.**village**, das Dorf.to visit, *t.* besuchen, *w.*

voice, die Stimme.

vor — weise

vor, *prep.* 35, 128, *c.*, before, in front of, ago.

pref. before, forward, in front.

vorbei, *pref.* by, over, passing, done.

vorbeikommen, *i. s.* 193, 195, to come by (past).

vorbereiten, *i. s.* 201, to ride by.

der Vorfahr, *w.* 254, ancestor.

vornehm, *adj.* gentle, of rank, distinguished, eminent.

wachsen, *i. s.* to grow.

wahr, *adj.* true, genuine.

die Wahrheit, 265, truth.

während, *prep.* 242, *f.*, during; *sub. conj.* while.

der Wald, 68, forest, woods.

der Wanderer, 265, traveler.

der Wandersmann, 68, 72, traveler.

wann, *adv.* when.

warm, *adj.* 265, warm.

warten, auf (acc.) *i. w.* 242, *c.*, *1*, to wait for.

warum, *adv.* why.

was, *pr.*, see *wer*.

for etwas, something.

was für, *indecl. inter. pr.* 153, what kind of.

das Wasser, water.

der Weg, way, road, path.

wegen, *prep.* 242, *f.*, on account of, for the sake of.

das Weh, *mx.* 88, woe, pain, grief.

weil, *sub. conj.* because, since.

die Weile, space of time, while.

der Weinstock, vine.

weise, *adj.* 112, wise.

wagon — Wednesday

wagon, *der Wagen*, 51.

to wait, *i. warten*, *w.*, *auf (acc.)*.

to wait upon, *aufwarten*, *w.*, *dat.*
wall, *die Wand* (interior), *die Mauer* (exterior).

to want, *t.:*

= desire, *wollen*, *mod. aux.* 167, 223 ff., *wünschen*, *w.*

= be deficient in, *fehlen*, *w.*, *imp.*, *dat.* 243, *a*, *1*.

= be in need of, *nötig haben*, *w.* 176.

= be without, *mangeln*, *w.*, *imp.*, *dat.* 243, *a*, *1*.

= need, use, *brauchen*, *w.*

= require, *bedürfen*, *irr. w.* 223 ff.

warm, *adj.* warm, 265.

to wash, *t. waschen*, *s.* 173, *1*.

water, *das Wasser*.

way, *der Weg*.

= course, *die Bahn*, 80.

= distance, *die Strecke*.

= manner, *die Weise*.

= means, *das Mittel*.

we, *pers. pr.* *wir*, 134 ff.

weather, *das Wetter*.

Wednesday, *der Mittwoch*, 92, 132.

weit — wohl

weit, *adj.* far, distant, wide, large.
weitergehen, *i. s.* 174, 189, to go on, continue.
weitersprechen, *i. s.* to continue speaking.
welch, *pron. adj.* 137, *c.* 152, 155, 259 : *inter.* which, what.
rel. who, which, what, that.
die Welt, world.
wenden, *t. irr. w.* 179, to turn.
wenig, *pron. adj.* 100, 259, *indecl.* in sing. little (quantity), few.
wenn, *sub. conj.* if, when, whenever.
wer, **was**, *rel.* and *inter. pr.* 137, *c.* 151, 156, who, what, whoever, whatever.
werben, *i. s.* 169, 174, 175, 196, 218, 235, 241, *b.* 266, 266, *i.* to become.
werfen, *t. s.* to throw, 266, 266, *i.*
das Wetter, weather.
wider, *prep.* 45, against, in opposition to.
doubtful pref. 203.
wie, *adv.* as (manner), like, how ; *sub. conj.* how, as, when.
wieder, *adv.* again.
doubtful pref. 203.
der Wille(n), *I.* 245, will, design,
der Winter, 239, *f.* winter.
wir, *pers. pr.* 134 ff., we.
wirklich, *adj.* real.
wissen, *t. irr. w.* 177, 230, to know.
wo, *adv.* where.
in comp. with prep. 137, *c.* which, what.
die Woche, week.
wohl, *adv.* 120, 279, *b.* well, indeed, perhaps, probably.

week — wood

week, die Woche.
well, *adv.* gut, wohl, 120.
interj. nun.
what, *inter. pr.* was, 137, *c.* 150 ff.
inter. adj. welch, 150 ff.
what (kind of), was für, 153 ; welch.
when, *sub. conj.* :
definite, als.
indefinite, wenn.
interrogative, wann.
adv. wann.
where, *adv.* wo.
whether, *sub. conj.* ob.
which, *rel. pr.* welch-, der, 154 ff.
pron. adj. welch-, 150 ff.
while, *sub. conj.* :
= simultaneous action, während.
= shorter action, indem.
who, *inter. pr.* wer, 151.
rel. pr. der, welch-, wer, 154 ff.
whoever, *rel. pr.* wer, 156.
whole, *adj.* ganz, 263.
why, *adv.* warum.
wife, die Frau, *w.* 80.
to will, be willing, *mod. aux.* wollen, 167, 223 ff.
window, das Fenster.
wine, der Wein.
winter, der Winter, 239, *f.*
to wish, *t. wünschen*, *w.*
with, *prep.* :
= accompaniment, mit, 44.
= at the house of, in case of, bei, 44.
without, *prep.* ohne, 45.
woman, die Frau, *w.* 80.
wood, das Holz.
woods, der Wald, 68 ; das Holz.

wohnen — zwischen

wohnen, *i. w.* to live, reside, dwell.
 der Wolf, II, wolf.
 wollen, *mod. aux.* 167, 223 ff., *de-*
noting the will, intention, or
claim of the subject.
 das Wort, 72, word; ins Wort fallen,
 to interrupt.
 wünschen, *t. w.* to wish, long for,
 desire.
 der Wurm, 68, worm.

die Zahl, *w.* 80, number, cipher, figure.
 zeigen, *t. w.* to show.
 die Zeit, time.
 zer-, *insep. pref.* 199, 292.
 zerbrechen, *t. s.* to break to pieces.
 ziehen, *t. and i. s.* 210, to draw, pull,
 drag, move.
 das Zimmer, room.
 zittern, *i. w.* to tremble.
 zu, *prep.* 44, to, at, for (purpose).
 adv. too.
 pref. towards, closed, shut.
 sign of inf. 167, to.
 zuschränken, *t. w.* to press shut, close.
 zufrieden, *adj.* at peace, satisfied.
 zuhalten, *t. s.* to hold shut.
 zurück, *pref.* back, behind.
 zurücklassen, *t. s.* to leave behind.
 zurückschicken, *t. w.* to send back.
 zusammen, *pref.* together.
 zusammenbinden, *t. s.* to bind to-
 gether.
 zusammentragen, *t. s.* to carry
 together, collect.
 der Zügel, 285, rein, bridle.
 zwei, *num. adj.* 122, two.
 zwingen, *t. s.* to force, compel.
 zwischen, *prep.* 35, between, among.

work — zero

work, die Arbeit.
 to work, *i. arbeiten, w.*
 workingman, der Arbeiter, 285.
 world, die Welt.
 worth, *adj.* wert.
 to write, *t. schreiben, s.*
 wrong, das Unrecht, II, 59.
 adj. unrecht.
 = incorrect, unrichtig.
 to be wrong, unrecht haben, *w.* 176.

yard, der Hof.
 ye, *pers. pr.* ihr, 134 ff.
 year, das Jahr, II, 56.
 yearly, *adj.* jährlich.
 yellow, *adj.* gelb.
 yes, *adv.* ja.
 yesterday, *adv.* gestern.
 yet, *adv.:*
 = time, noch.
 = anyway, doch.
 yon, *pron. adj.* jen-, 102, 145, 148.
 yonder, *adv.* dort.
 adj. jen-, 102, 145, 148.
 you, *pers. pr.* du, ihr, Sie, 134 ff.
 young, *adj.* jung, 285.
 young lady, das Fräulein, 285.
 your, *poss. adj.* dein, euer, Ihr, 138,
 140 ff.
 yours, *poss. pr.* deiner, der deine,
 der beinige, eu(e)rer, etc.; Ihrer,
 etc. 16, c, 138, 140 ff.
 yourself, *refl. pr.* deiner, dir, dich;
 euer, euch; Ihrer, sich, 138, 139;
 intensive selbst, selber, 147.
 youth, die Jugend.
 = young man, der Jüngling, 285.
 zero, die Null, *w.* 255.

SUBJECT-INDEX

Ablaut :

- as sign of past time, 164
- classes of verb, 188
- in derivation, 284

Accent :

- compounds, 14
- doubtful prefixes, 203
- irregular, 15
- simple words, 13

Accusative :

- formation of, 40, 41, 42, 75
- use of, 25, 35, 45, 244

Address :

- nominative of, 241 *c*
- pronouns in, 138

Adjective clause, 158

Adjectives :

- descriptive :
 - comparison, 115 ff., 265
 - declension, 107 ff., 259 ff.
 - not declined, 105, 263
 - derivation, 287
 - endings, 29, 108
 - function, 106
 - uses, 105, 117
- numeral, 121-127
 - cardinal, 121
 - in dates, 129
 - declined, 126
 - ordinal, 127
- possessive, 140 ff.
- pronominal, 99, 104, 258

Adjectives :

- proper, 16 *c* 1, 264
- Adjunct of the verb, 65, 1
- Adverbial clause, 158

Alphabet, 1

Apposition, 182

Arrangement :

- of inverted or transposed clause, 84
- of normal clause, 83

Articles :

- definite, 28
- omission of, 240
- use of, 132, 239
- indefinite, 30, 31

Auxiliaries :

- modal, 222-229
- of passive voice, 235
- of apparent passive, 237, 1
- tense :
 - future, 217
 - perfect, 213, 214
 - none in simple tenses, 33, 1

Capitals, 16

Classification :

- Nouns, 40, 3, 41 *c*, 47, 90
 - First Class, 48, 245 ff.
 - Second Class, 54, 247 ff.
 - Third Class, 68, 250 ff.
 - Weak, 75, 76, 253 ff.
 - Mixed, 85, 256 ff.

Classification :
 Verbs, 187, 188
 a Class, 189
 e Class, 193
 ei Class, 200
 i Class, 205
 ie Class, 208
 irregular strong, 188, 1
 weak, 172 ff.
 irregular weak, 179

Clauses :
 arrangement of, 83, 84
 dependent, 65, 158, 159, 226
 independent, 65 ff.
 infinitive, 160, 1, 273, 274
 unity of, 160

Cognates, 293 ff.

Colon, 17, 3

Comma, 17, 2

Comparison, 116 ff.
 irregular, 120
 umlaut in, 116, 265

Compound nouns :
 accent, 14
 declension, 41 f, 72
 gender, 92

Compound tenses, 170, 211

Conditional, 219
 for subjunctive, 222, 1

Conjugations, see Verbs

Conjunctions :
 coördinating, 66
 subordinating, 158, 161

Consonants, 9
 classification, 10
 pronunciation, 11
 shifting, 293 ff.

Contraction :
 of preposition and article, 46
 of verb stem and ending, 173

Dates, 129

Dative :
 formation of, 40, 2, 41 *d*
 use of, 24, 35, 44, 243

Days of the week, 131

Declension of :
 adjectives, 29, 99 ff., 258 ff.
 articles, 28, 30
 nouns, 38 ff.
 strong, 42 ff., 245
 weak, 75 ff.
 mixed, 85 ff.
 pronouns, 134 ff.
 proper names, 93-98

Digraphs, 2

Diminutives, 48, 285

Diphthongs, 4

Endings of :
 adjectives, 29, 101, 108
 comparison, 115
 nouns, 40
 verbs :
 past tense, 177, 183
 present tense, 172, 173, 224 *a*

Euphonic e in :
 dative, 40, 2
 genitive, 40, 1
 present tense, 172, 1, 173
 superlative, 115
 verbs in -eIn and -ern, 172, 2

Exclamation point, 17, 4

Feminines :
 declined in the singular, 81
 not declined in the singular, 41 *a*,
 42, 75

Future tenses :
 formation of, 217, 220
 use of, 279, 282

Gender:

- determination of, 91
- grammatical, 27
- natural, 27
- of compounds, 92
- of days of week and months, 132

Genitive:

- formation of:
 - strong nouns, 39, 40, 1, 42
 - weak nouns, 75
 - mixed nouns, 85
 - names of persons, 93
 - names of places, 96
 - adjectives with strong nouns, 110
- use of, 23, 242

Hyphen, 17, 6

Imperative:

- of second singular, 172, 3
- perfect participle as substitute, 270
- wanting in modal auxiliaries, 224 b
- in, nouns in, 78

Indirect discourse:

- mode, 207, 276 d
- tense, 276 d

Infinitive:

- formation of, 166
- use of, 272 ff.
- for perfect participle, 224 d, 225
- governed by a preposition, 275
- sign of, 167
- sign omitted, 167, 225
- clause, 160, 1, 273, 274

Intransitive verbs:

- auxiliary, 214
- made transitive, 292
- passive voice of, 236, 2

Measure:

- form of nouns of, 181
- construction after nouns of, 182
- expressed by accusative, 244 g²

Mixed Declension, 85 ff.

Modal auxiliaries, 223-229

Months, 130

Names:

- of persons, 93
- of places, 96
- other proper, 98

Neuter verbs, 241 b

-niš, nouns in, 58, 60

Nominative:

- formation of, 39
- use of, 22, 241

Nouns:

- classification, 40, 3, 41 e, 90
- declension, 38 ff.
- derivation, 284 ff.
- gender, 91

Numerals, 121-127

Order:

- inverted, 63 ff., 84
- normal, 63 ff., 83, 84
- arrangement of normal clause, 83
- irregularity of, 224 e
- transposed, 63 ff., 84, 158, 159
- irregularity of, 226

Participles, 168

- perfect, 168, 270 ff.
- strong, 186
- weak, 178, 179
- ge= omitted, 169, 235 a
- used for imperative, 270
- present, 168, 269

Particles, 18

Partitive use of the noun, 182, 240

Parts of speech, 18

Passive voice, 235-238

- formation of, 235
- of intransitive verbs, 236, 2
- agent of, 236
- avoided, 237
- apparent passive, 238

Past tense :

- endings :
- strong, 183
- weak, 177
- irregular weak, 179

length of vowel :

- a Class, 191
- e Class, 195
- ei Class, 201
- i Class, 206
- ie Class, 210

sign of past time :

- strong, 183
- weak, 176
- use, 278

Perfect tenses :

- auxiliary, 214
- formation, 212
- use, 280-281

Period, 17, 1

Predicate :

- accusative, 244 *d*
- nominative, 241 *b*
- adjective, 105, 269
- of possessives, 141, 1

Prefixes :

- inseparable, 199
- separable, 198, 202
- doubtful, 203
- ge= in perfect participle, 168
- ge= omitted, 169

Prepositions governing :

- accusative, 45
- dative, 44
- dative or accusative, 36
- genitive, 242 *f*
- infinitive, 275

Present tense :

- endings, 172
- vowel change, 173
- contraction, 173
- irregular, 174, 224, 230
- use, 277

Principal parts :

- noun, 39
- verb, 165

Probability expressed by the future, 279, 282

Progressive verb forms, 33, 1

Pronouns :

- demonstrative, 143-149
- substitution, 137
- interrogative, 150-153
- substitution, 137
- personal, 134-138
- of address, 138
- agreement, 135, 136
- capitalized, 16 *b* and *c*
- substitution, 137
- possessive, 140 ff.
- reflexive, 139
- relative, 154-157
- substitution, 137

Proper names, 93-98

- adjectives formed from, 16 *c*, 1, 264

Punctuation, 17

Purpose expressed by :

- subjunctive, 276 *c* 3
- um with the infinitive, 275
- zu with the dative, 44

Quantity, 6-8
 Quotation marks, 17, 5

Reflexive:
 pronoun, 139
 verb, 231 ff., 267

-ſal, nouns in, 58
 Simple forms, 204
 Subjunctive:
 formation of:
 past, 177, 179, 183, 184
 irregular, 179, 266, 1
 present, 172
 force of, 163, 276
 use of, 276 ff.
 in indirect discourse, 207, 276 a
 in unreal conditions, 222, 276 c
 tenses of, 276 c 1, 276 d 1

Superlative:
 of adjectives, 117
 of adverbs, 118
 irregular, 120

Syllabication, 12

Synopsis, see Verbs
 ſ, use of, 2, 5

Tenses:
 simple, 170
 compound, 170, 211
 future:
 formation, 217, 220
 use, 279, 282

past:
 formation:
 irregular, 179, 266, 1
 strong, 183
 weak, 177
 use, 33, 1, 278

Tenses:
 perfect:
 auxiliary, 214
 formation, 212-213
 use, 280-281

present:
 formation, 172-173
 irregular, 174, 224, 230
 use, 33, 1, 277
 of subjunctive, 276 c 1, 276 d 1

Time:
 definite, 67, 244 g 3
 duration of, 67, 244 g 2
 indefinite, 242 e
 measure of, 244 g 2
 in dates, 129
 of day, 128

Titles, 95

Transitive verbs:
 auxiliary, 214
 made intransitive, 233

Trigraph, 2

Umlaut, 5
 on double vowel, 61
 on nouns in -ſtum, 70
 in present tense, 173, 174

sign of:
 comparison, 116, 265
 derivation, 285, 289
 past subjunctive strong, 184

plural:
 First Class, 49, 51
 Second Class, 55, 57
 Third Class, 69, 70

vowels capable of, 5

Unreal conditions:
 mode, 222, 276 c
 tense, 276 c 1

Verbs:

auxiliaries:

- passive voice, 235
- apparent passive, 237, 1
- modal, 222-229
- tense:

- future, 217
- perfect, 213-214

causatives, 290

derivatives, 289 ff.

intransitive:

- auxiliary, 214
- made transitive, 292
- passive voice of, 236, 2

irregular, 174, 179, 188, 1, 266, 1

neuter, 241 b

progressive forms, 33, 1

reflexive, 231-234, 267 ff.

simple forms, 204

strong:

- classes, 188 ff.
- classification, 187
- list of, 266
- past tense, 183
- irregular, 188, 1, 266, 1
- subjunctive, 184, 266, 1

Verbs:

strong:

- perfect participle, 168, 186
- prefix omitted, 169, 235 a
- present tense, 172 ff.
- vowel change in, 173

synopsis of:

- active voice, 221
- modal auxiliary, 227
- passive voice, 238
- reflexive, 234
- simple forms, 204

transitive:

- auxiliary, 214
- made intransitive, 233

weak:

- past tense, 177
- irregular, 179
- perfect participle, 168, 178
- present tense, 172

Vowels:

- changed in present, 173
- quantity of, 6-8
- umlautable, 5

Word formation, 283-292



